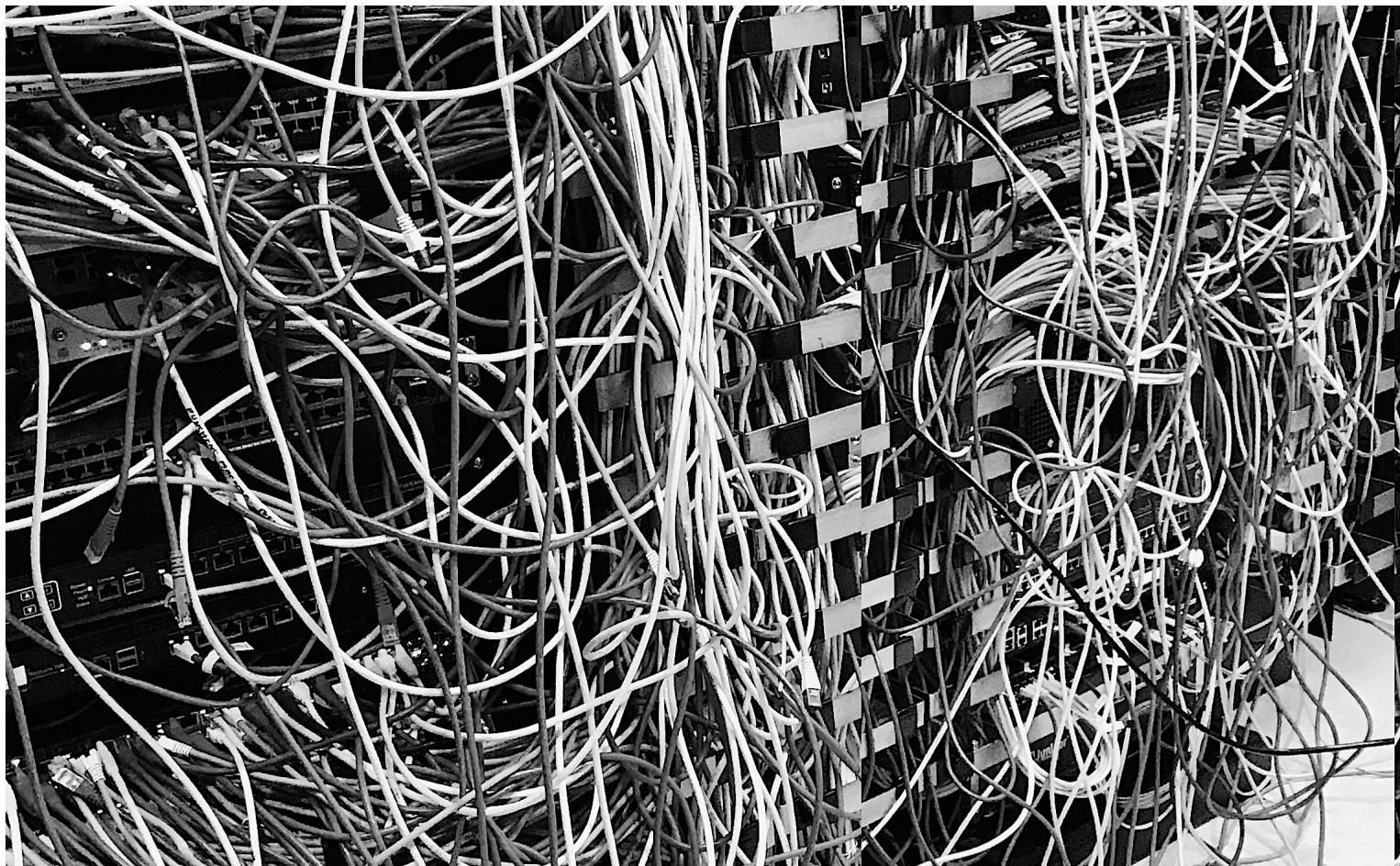


NETWORK TOPICS COMPENDIUM

OMNIBUS COMPILED OF PRIMERS, REFERENCE,
REFRESHERS, AND STUDENT RESOURCES



Compiled writings by Tristan Mendoza 2023

Make copies but keep intact - please consider donating if you use this to teach with!

This version missing topics that still need editing (in progress), such as WiFi technologies, SSL and IPSec VPNs, Cisco ASA NAT configuration, Zone-based firewall, plus command one-liners for Netcat, Nmap, Hping, and more.

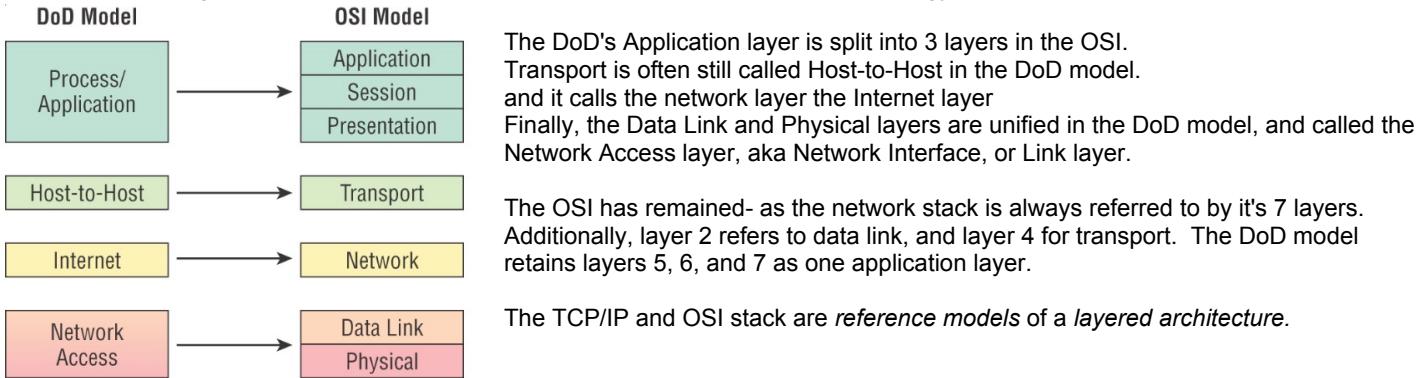
01. OSI and DARPA Network Models/ Network basics I pp 1-12
Transport protocols
Network protocols
Data-Link protocols
Ping and Traceroute (and their relatives)
Round trip ping trip explained PC1->router->PC2 and back
02. Subnetting and binary overview- Addressing crash course pp 13-28
IPv4 Fast subnetting technique, VLSM, binary practice
IPv4 quick reference sheet and worksheet (for dry erase marker)
IPv6 overview and SLAAC/DHCPv6, Cisco routing in IPv6
IPv6 subnetting large ISP blocks down /32 to /60 (intro only)
03. Cisco-based switching topics pp 29-46
Cisco switchports: access and trunks, port security /VR/SVI
VLANs, VTP, RoS
Spanning Tree, EtherChannel (PAgP and LACP)
04. Cisco Misc. topics pp 47-66
Load Balancing with VRRP, HSRP, GLBP
Cisco-based DHCP, NAT (non-ASA), Access control lists
05. Routing on Cisco Devices pp 67-81
OSPF and LSAs, Stub areas, NSSA, etc.
EIGRP, k-values and metric, RD/FD, SR/FS in topology
IPv4 Interior routing- static, RIP, OSPF, EIGRP examples
IPv6 version (both show changing routing to another type)
06. BGP v4 (complete overview condensed info from 3 versions of the CCNP R&S Portable command guide and the ROUTE book) pp 82-104
07. Short subjects and other stuff pp 105-118
BGP route leaks and BGP hijacking intro (more of a 1 pg "what is...")
Setting up GRE with IPSEC for a Typical VPN
DMVPN - Dynamic Multipoint VPN (multipoint GRE, IPsec, NHRP)
TCP Ports - Interactions and Scanning (nmap concepts, port responses)
Cables and connectors, line speeds (sortof Network+ junk)

The OSI and DARPA TCP/IP Networking Models

DEC/IBM (SNA) before 1980s, into 90s when TCP/IP prevailed and overtook the OSI model

The TCP/IP model is not a top-down comprehensive design reference - the purpose is illustrating the logical groups and scopes of functions needed. In general, direct or strict comparisons of the OSI and TCP/IP models should be avoided, because the layering in TCP/IP is not a principal design criterion. It just makes it easier to understand the interaction of the overlying technologies.

OSI Networking Model (DARPA's TCP/IP stack remains, but OSI won the terminology war)

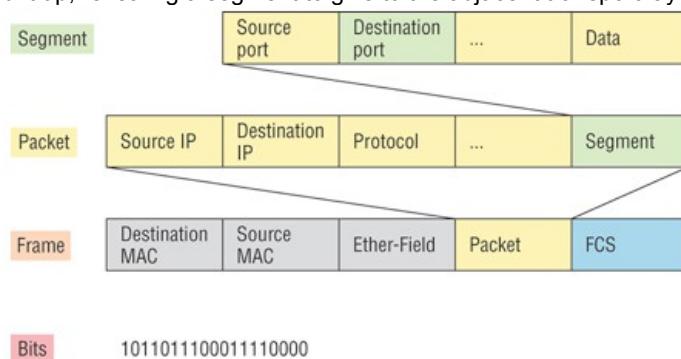


Same-Layer Interactions are between two computers at the same layer (like HTTP to HTTP)

Adjacent-Layer - A layer passes info to neighboring layer (up or down) on the same computer

A layer's data is referred as a Protocol Data Unit. A layer 2 frame is a L2PDU, a network IP packet is a L3PDU, and a UDP or TCP segment is a L4PDU.

An example of outgoing data, HTTP sends to TCP to put into a segment, it then sends to IP to pack up in a packet, and data-link frames it to go out the wire as bits. Likewise, when frame is pulled out of the incoming bits, it's frame is unpacked, the IP packet passed up the stack to be opened it up, revealing a segment to give to the adjacent transport layer.



Layer 7 - Application Layer - Telnet, HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3, VoIP, SNMP. Provides an interface between the communications software and any applications that need to communicate outside the computer on which the application resides. It also defines processes for user authentication

Layer 6 - Presentation Layer - ASCII, EBCDIC; de/compression, de/encryption. "Defines and negotiates data formats"; "how standard data should be formatted." Includes JPEG, TIFF, GIF, PICT, MPEG, MIDI, etc.

Layer 5 - Session Layer - PPTP, L2TP, NetBIOS, NFS, PAP, RPC, SOCKS. From a client to a server; three different modes: simplex, half-duplex, and full-duplex. How to start, control, and end conversations (sessions). This includes the control and management of multiple bidirectional messages so that the application can be notified if only some of a series of messages are completed. Sockets associate traffic with the transport layer's ports

Layer 4 - The Transport Layer - TCP, UDP, and SCTP - Determines how to handle data sent/ delivered over the network layer. Depending on the protocol, may provide for retransmission, i.e., error recovery, and may use flow control to prevent unnecessary congestion by attempting to send data at a rate that the network can accommodate. Multiplexing of incoming data for different flows to applications on the same host is also performed (ports and sessions). Reordering of the incoming data stream when packets arrive out of order is included.

The Network Layer (Layer 3) defines end-to-end delivery of packets and defines logical addressing to accomplish this. It also defines how routing works and how routes are learned; and how to fragment a packet into smaller packets to accommodate media with smaller maximum transmission unit sizes. Examples include. IP, IPX, and ICMP. Both IP and IPX define logical addressing, routing, the learning of routing information, and end-to-end delivery rules.

The Data-Link Layer (Layer 2) is concerned with getting data across one particular link or medium. The data link protocols define delivery across an individual link. These protocols are necessarily concerned with the type of media in use. Examples include. IEEE 802.3/802.2, HDLC, Frame Relay, PPP, FDDI, ATM. The lower level works with standards governing the physical transmission medium (Layer 1), including use of connector pins, electrical properties like voltage, etc.

The Physical Layer (Layer 1)

This is the medium: copper wire, fiber, or over the airwaves. This will be in an appendix of sorts to talk protocols sooner here.

Layer 4 - Transport Layer (aka Host-to-Host) - end-to-end data transport services between hosts. TCP is a protocol with sequencing, acknowledgements- communications between the participating hosts. UDP is connectionless and there is no verification either side gets the other host's data.

TCP implements *reliable networking* - requiring acknowledgments, sequencing, and flow control will all be used. The 3-way handshake virtual circuit setup; removes a lot of programming work, but for real-time video and VoIP, UDP is often better because using it results in less overhead, but is less reliable)

Connection establishment and termination: SYN-->ACK-->SYN-ACK-->SYN and later, FIN-->FINACK?-->FIN!

The types of flow control are buffering, windowing, and congestion avoidance.

Sliding Window - TCP allows the receiving device to dictate the amount of data the sender can send before receiving an acknowledgment, the mechanism to grant future windows is typically just a number that grows (slides) upward slowly after each acknowledgment.

"Positive acknowledgment with retransmission" - The sender documents each segment measured in bytes, then sends and waits for acknowledgment before sending the next segment. The transmitting machine starts a timer and will retransmit if it expires before it gets an acknowledgment back from the receiving end.

The TCP Segment's Format and Header Fields

16-bit source port		16-bit destination port			
32-bit sequence number					
32-Bit Acknowledgment Number					
4-bit header length	Reserved	Flags	16-bit window size		
16-bit TCP checksum		16-bit urgent pointer			
Options					
Data					

Source port: port number of the application on the host sending the data

Destination port: This is the port number of the application requested on the destination host.

Sequence number: Used to put the data back in the correct order (or retransmit missing or damaged data) during sequencing process.

Acknowledgment number: The value is the TCP octet that is expected next.

Header length aka Offset: Specifies the size of the TCP header in 32-bit words (a "word" is 4 bytes). The minimum is 5 words and the maximum is 15 words (so minimum is 20 bytes and maximum of 60 bytes, allowing for up to 40 bytes of options in the header)

Reserved: Always set to zero.

Code bits/flags: Control bits for functions to manage a session. (SYN, ACK, FIN, URG, PSH, etc)

Window: The window size the sender is willing to accept, in octets.

Checksum: This checksum results in combining data such as addresses involved, segment size and types with a formula that can be checked on the receiving end (it is recalculated in a misleadingly- labeled 'pseudoheader' to do it) - it isn't a CRC which checks all data, but it is sufficient.

Urgent: A valid field only if the Urgent pointer in the code bits is set. If so, this value indicates the offset from the current sequence number, in octets, where the segment of non-urgent data begins.

Options: May be 0, meaning that no options have to be present, or a multiple of 32 bits. However, if any options are used that do not cause the option field to total a multiple of 32 bits, padding of 0s must be used to make sure the data begins on a 32-bit boundary (aka "words").

Data: Handed down to the TCP PDU by the upper-layer headers

TCP - Transport Control Protocol

Source Port: 5973

Destination Port: 23

Sequence Number: 1456389907

Ack Number: 1242056456

Offset:

Reserved:

Code:

%011000

Ack is valid, Push Request

Window:

61320

Checksum:

0x61a6

Urgent Pointer:

0

No TCP Options

TCP Data Area:

vL.5.+.5.+.5.+.5 76 4c

The TCP handshake and termination - quick overview:

The Initial Sequence and Response Numbers (ISN and IRN) are numbers exchanged in TCP segments during computer network communication between a client and a server. These are central in a SYN flood defense known as SYN cookies.

Here is a sample session:

1. The client sends a SYN with an ISN of 1664882716.
2. Server replies with a SYNACK with an IRN of 829007135 and an ACK value of 1664822717. The ACK reports the next the server expects from the client in this sequence (1664822717)
3. Client sends an ACK back 829007136 to increment the server's IRN in the SYNACK, which also reports it expects from the server in this sequence (829007136). It sends this with a sequence number of 1664882717, just like the server expects.

1. Client:	SYN	seq 1664882716	
2. Server:	SYNACK	seq 829007135	ack 1664882717
3. Client:	ACK	seq 1664882717	ack 829007136
4. Server:	ACK	seq 829007136	ack 1664882718
5. Client:	ACK	seq 1664882718	ack 829007137

Then later, server terminates the connection:

1. Client:	ACK	seq 1664882733	ack 829008199
2. Server:	FIN-ACK	seq 829008199	ack 1664882734
3. Client:	ACK!	seq 1664882734	ack 829008200
4. Client:	FIN-ACK?	seq 1664882734	ack 829008200 (yes, two different responses)
5. Server:	ACK	seq 1664882735	

User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

There are times that it's wise for developers to opt for UDP rather than TCP, one of them being when reliability is already taken care of at the upper layers. If the segments arrive out of order, which is commonplace in IP networks, they'll simply be passed up to the next layer in whatever order they were received, without sequencing or other features TCP provides. A UDP header is only 8 bytes (compared to TCP's 20 bytes) - has 4 fields, each of which are 2 bytes. Source and checksum are optional in IPv4 (only source is optional in IPv6)

UDP - User Datagram Protocol

Source Port: 1085
Destination Port: 5136
Length: 41
Checksum: 0x7a3c
UDP Data Area: ..Z.....00 01 5a 96 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 11 0000 00

Port numbers for communicating with upper layers

Ordered data transfer and data segmentation. Ports with numbers 0-1023 are called well-known ports; ports with numbers 1024-49151 are called registered ports, and ports with numbers 49152-65535 are called dynamic, private or ephemeral ports. *The source port number is arbitrary- usually ephemeral. Destination port is specific to process/application (workstation sends SSH connection out it's port using an ephemeral port #, to port 22 at the listening SSH process on the other end) . The virtual circuit is defined by the source and destination port number plus the source and destination IP address and called a socket.*

20-21 FTP	110 POP3	465 SMTP over SSL	587 SMTP
22 SSH/SCP	123 NTP	500 ISAKMP	636 LDAP over SSL
23 Telnet	135 Microsoft RPC	512 rexec	646 LDP (MPLS)
25 SMTP	137-139 NetBIOS	513 rlogin	860 iSCSI
49 TACACS	143 IMAP4	514 syslog	902 VMware Server
53 DNS (uses both)	161-162 SNMP	515 LPD/LPR	989-990 FTP over SSL
67-68 DHCP/BOOTP	389 LDAP	520 RIP	993 IMAP4 over SSL
69 TFTP	443 HTTP over SSL	521 RIPvng (IPv6)	995 POP3 over SSL
80 HTTP	445 Microsoft DS	546-547 DHCPv6	1025 Microsoft RPC
88 Kerberos	464 Kerberos		

IANA assigns a port number for both TCP and UDP even if the service uses only one. Lists like the one above are ok, but often not very accurate (especially with VoIP). In Wireshark, it has a builtin tool for that.

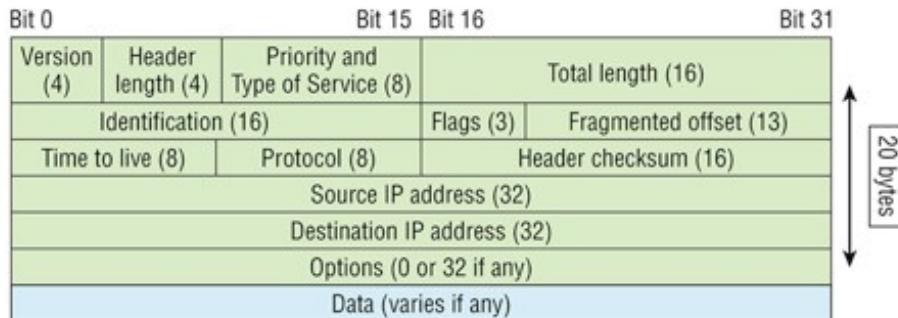
Authoritative list here:

<https://www.iana.org/assignments/service-names-port-numbers/service-names-port-numbers.xhtml>

Layer 3 - Network/ Internet Layer - IPv4, IPv6, IPX, IPSec, ICMP.

Has three main features: logical addressing, routing (forwarding), and path determination. Routing defines how devices (typically routers) forward packets to their final destination. Logical addressing defines how each device can have an address that can be used by the routing process. Path determination refers to the work done by routing protocols to learn all possible routes and determine the best way to move data. The network layer handles two types: data packets and route update packets. *Ultimately, Layer 3 doesn't care about where a particular host is located- only about where networks are located and the best way to reach them.*

IPv4 (below) has more on it in the following pages, in the form of a subnetting chart and worksheet on subnetting.



Header length: HLEN in 32-bit words.

Priority/TOS/Precedence: how to handle the datagram. The first 3 bits are the priority bits, called the differentiated services bits.

Total length: including header and data.

Identification: Unique IP-packet value used to differentiate fragmented packets from different datagrams.

Fragmentation Flags: Specifies whether fragmentation should occur.

Fragment offset: Provides fragmentation and reassembly if the packet is too large to put in a frame. It accommodates different MTUs on the Internet.

Time To Live: TTL set when packet is generated. If it doesn't get to where it's supposed to go before the TTL expires, it's dropped.

Protocol: Port of encapsulated payload protocol; for example, TCP is port 6 or UDP is port 17

Header checksum: CRC on header only.

Source IP address: 32-bit IP address of sending station.

Destination IP address: 32-bit IP address of the station this packet is destined for.

Options: Used for network testing, debugging, security, and more.

Data: The upper-layer data.

IP Header - Internet Protocol Datagram

Version:	4
Header Length:	5
Precedence:	0
Type of Service:	%0000
Unused:	%00
Total Length:	187
Identifier:	22486

Fragmentation Flags: %010 Do Not Fragment

Fragment Offset:	0
Time To Live:	60
IP Type:	0x06 TCP
Header Checksum:	0xd031
Source IP Address:	10.7.1.30
Dest. IP Address:	10.7.1.10
No Internet Datagram Options	

Protocols found in the protocol field of an IP header

ICMP 1, TCP 6, UDP 17, IPv6 41, GRE 47, EIGRP 88, OSPF 89, L2TP 115

For more: <http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers>

- IP packets in WiFi have a noticeably larger size, which is mainly to hold not only the source and destination IP addresses of the workstation, but also the IP addresses of the access points on either end. We may get into that more in the section on WiFi.

- IPSec is its own big topic which includes its mechanism and tunneling uses. This also will have its own dedicated area when we talk about VPN.

- IPv6 is saved toward the end of the routing and switching material, since it has a lot to talk about those things and the differences in IPv6 v.s. IPv4 (not much but it keeps things simpler to explain everything in IPv4 terms first instead of complicating it for people that might be new to all this).

ICMP

As its name implies, this is a simple general messaging protocol, mostly about traffic stuff.

IANA maintains lists of ICMPv4 and ICMPv6 message types:

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/icmp-parameters/icmp-parameters.xhtml>

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/icmpv6-parameters/icmpv6-parameters.xhtml>

From a network scanning perspective, the following types of ICMP messages are useful:

Type 8 (echo request) aka ping packets. Perform ping sweeping and identify accessible hosts. Type 0 is the reply.

Type 13 (timestamp request) get system time from host; in decimal, number of milliseconds since midnight GMT.

Common ICMP type 3 message (destination unreachable) codes

Firewalls and routers generate type 3 ICMP responses, providing insight into network configuration.

0 - Network unreachable

1 - Host unreachable

2 - Protocol unreachable

3 - Port unreachable

6 - Destination network unknown

7 - Destination host unknown

9 - Communication administratively prohibited (network)

10 - Communication administratively prohibited (host)

13 - Communication administratively prohibited (general)

Cisco exams used to like mentioning "buffer full/source quench (deprecated Type 3 msg 4)- router's buffer for incoming datagrams is full.

There is more on ICMP in the section about the tools PING and traceroute, since those also discuss TCP.

ICMP error messages include a copy of the IPv4 header, plus at least the first 8 bytes of data from the error-triggering frame. The length of ICMP error messages should not exceed 576 bytes. It is also intended to hold the type field indicating the upper layers contained within.

The ICMP data field can be exploited, as in the "Ping of death", large or fragmented ICMP packets are used for denial-of-service attacks. ICMP data can also be used to create covert tunnels for communication. There are more specific uses- encapsulation of IP packets into ICMP packets, leads to TCP session inclusion which opens the door for creative applications - there is also a telnet-like shell that can be opened.

Layer 2 - Data Link Layer

ARP, MAC (IEEE 802.3 Ethernet, DSL, ISDN, FDDI), PPP, L2TP, HDLC

Defines the rules that determine when a device can send data over a particular medium. Data link protocols also define the format of a header and trailer that allows devices attached to the medium to successfully send and receive data.

This layer transfers data between adjacent network nodes in a wide area network (WAN) or between nodes on the same local area network (LAN) segment. Frames do not cross the boundaries of a local network (these frames are encapsulated/replaced by new frames native to the WAN environment). Internetwork routing and global addressing are higher-layer functions, allowing data-link protocols to focus on local delivery, addressing, and media arbitration (between parties contending for access to a medium, without concern for their ultimate destination). When devices attempt to use a medium simultaneously, frame collisions can occur. Data-link protocols specify how devices detect and recover from such collisions, and often provide mechanisms to reduce or prevent them.

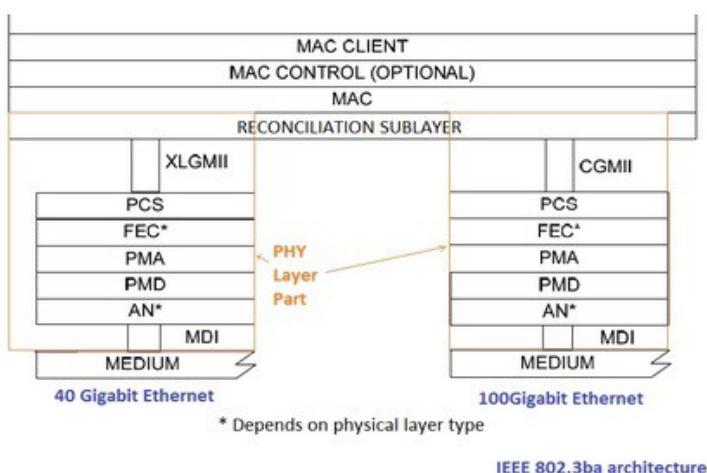
Logical link control sublayer

The uppermost sublayer, LLC, multiplexes protocols running atop the data link layer, and optionally provides flow control, acknowledgment, and error notification. The LLC provides addressing and control of the logical links between local devices: which mechanisms are to be used for addressing stations over the transmission medium and for controlling the data exchanged between the originator and recipient machines. It basically provides services to the network layer and hides the rest of the data link layer. Is outlined by IEEE 802.2 - https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_802.2

Media access control sublayer

The sublayer defines methods to control access to the physical layer. Since many networks use a shared medium (such as a single network cable, or a series of cables that are electrically connected into a single virtual medium) it is necessary to have rules for managing the medium to avoid conflicts. Examples include ethernet's CSMA/CD method of media access control, while Token Ring uses token passing. It also determines where one frame of data ends and the next one starts- frame synchronization. There are four means of frame synchronization: time based, character counting, byte stuffing and bit stuffing.

MAC Services: physical addressing, channel-access control (CSMA/CD and CSMA/CA), LAN switching (packet switching), including MAC filtering, Spanning Tree Protocol and Shortest Path Bridging (SPB), data packet queuing or scheduling, Store-and-forward switching or cut-through switching, Quality of Service (QoS) control, encoding schemes. It is outlined by IEEE 802.3 - See https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_802.3



Network engineers have it easy

The MAC sublayer of Layer 2 almost has its own huge protocol stack inside it, dealing with the gritty details of electrical signal properties of pins on connectors, light modulation for fiber optics, things we never have to think about with the physical medium.

Thankfully, most network engineers don't have to deal with this. This diagram is tame compared to some I have seen. This is the MAC layer substack for gigabit ethernet. We only have to think about the very top one layer, "MAC client".

Most networking classes never mention this- it is just "layer two 2nd half, then layer 1, da wire". I guess they think it will make their student's head explode or something.

Layer 2 Protocols - Ethernet Frames at the Data Link Layer

Preamble 7 bytes	SFD 1 byte	Destination 6 bytes	Source 6 bytes	Type 2 bytes	Data and Pad 46 – 1500 bytes	FCS 4 bytes
Packet						

Preamble - 7 bytes - pattern of alternating 1 and 0 bits, allowing network devices to easily synchronize their receiver clocks. Since least significant bits are transmitted first, the one breaking the alternating pattern tends to be last.

Start Frame Delimiter (SFD): 1 byte - The SFD octet is designed to break the bit pattern of the preamble and signal the start of the actual frame. Arguably, the SFD could more easily be called part of the preamble, and often you will just see 8 bytes: preamble. Wireshark won't see this (L2 strips it off)

Destination Address (DA) - 6 bytes - The 48-bit value of the intended recipient. Can also be BCast or MCast.

Source Address (SA) - 6 bytes - Sender. BC and MC address formats are illegal within the SA field.

802.1Q tag (optional) - 4 bytes - Ethernet II only

Length or Type - 2 bytes - Old 802.3 uses a Length field, but Ethernet_II frame uses a Type field to ID the layer 3 PDU. 0x86dd for IPv6 data; 0x0800 for IPv4; 0x8100 for VLAN-tagged (802.1Q); 0x0806 for ARP; 0x8147/48 MPLS; 0x88CC LLDP; 0x8163/64 PPPoE; 0x8906 FCoE; 0x8100 Jumbo;

Data - 46-1500 bytes - This is a packet sent down to the Data Link layer from the Network layer. The size can vary from 46 to 1,500 bytes. (44 if 802.1Q tag is not present, and greater than 1500 if jumbo). Padding to meet the minimum 46 bytes is added if necessary.

Frame Check Sequence (FCS/CRC) - Algorithm is run when each frame is built based on the data in the frame. If CRCs don't match, the frame is discarded, assuming errors have occurred.

The original IEEE 802.3 defined the min/max Ethernet frame size as 64/1518 bytes (max later increased to 1522 bytes for VLAN tagging. MTU in an Ethernet LAN 1500 bytes by default).

The minimum size of an Ethernet frame that carries an ICMP packet is 74 bytes. (ping packet with no options will generate a 74 byte packet with a 60 byte IP Header, 8 byte ICMP header

Minimum 64 bytes (header + data + FCS) -- 64-(14+4)=46 bytes for data, padded if needed

Size of Ethernet frame - 24 Bytes - [this doesn't include preamble 8 bytes]

Size of IPv4 Header (without any options) - 20 bytes

Size of TCP Header (without any options) - 20 Bytes

So total size of empty TCP datagram - 24 + 20 + 20 = 64 bytes

Size of UDP header - 8 bytes

So total size of empty UDP datagram - 24 + 20 + 8 = 52 bytes

Ethernet HW usually filters preamble and FCS on incoming packets (so applications won't see them- Wireshark)

Data Link and Ethernet - Hex to Dec and MAC Addresses



48-bit (6-byte) MAC address written in a hexadecimal format (instead of binary for readability).

The organizationally unique identifier (OUI) is assigned by the IEEE to an organization. It's composed of 24 bits, or 3 bytes, and it in turn assigns a globally administered address

Individual/Group (I/G) bit. When it has a value of 0, we can assume that the address is the MAC address of a device and that it may well appear in the source portion of the MAC header. When it's a 1, we can assume that the address represents either a broadcast or multicast address in Ethernet."

Global/local bit, sometimes called the G/L bit or U/L bit, where U means universal. When set to 0, this bit represents a globally administered address, as assigned by the IEEE, but when it's a 1, it represents a locally governed and administered address. This becomes clearer when discussing IPv6 and MAC addresses.

Manufacturer-assigned code commonly starts with 24 0s for the first card made and continues to 16,777,216 (24 ones in binary). It is often incorporated into the serial number as well.

Hex to Binary conversion: A "nibble" is 4 bits and a byte is 8 bits (or an octet)

If we have a 1 placed in each spot of our nibble, we would then add up $8 + 4 + 2 + 1$ to give us a maximum value of 15. Another example for our nibble values would be 1001, meaning that the 8 bit and the 1 bit are turned on, which equals a decimal value of 9. If we have a nibble binary value of 0110, then our decimal value would be 6, because the 4 and 2 bits are turned on. You take these two nibbles as binary and run them together as a byte: you get the real value 10010110, which is $128 + 64 + 32 + 16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 = 150$

Example: 0x6A- each hex character is one nibble and that two hex characters joined together make a byte. To figure out the binary value, put the hex characters into two nibbles and then join them together into a byte. 6 = 0110; A, which is 10 in hex = 1010; so the complete binary byte would be 01101010, and $64+32+8+2=106$ is the decimal value.

A binary number: 11001100. What's it in hex? Split it: 1100 = 12 and 1100 = 12, so therefore, it's representation is CC in hex, but the decimal conversion would be $128 + 64 + 8 + 4 = 204$, the real value.

What about 10110101? The hex answer would be 0xB5, since 1011 converts to B and 0101 converts to 5 in hex value. The decimal equivalent is $128 + 32 + 16 + 4 + 1 = 181$

Hex	Bin	Dec	5	0101	5	B	1011	11
0	0000	0	6	0110	6	C	1100	12
1	0001	1	7	0111	7	D	1101	13
2	0010	2	8	1000	8	E	1110	14
3	0011	3	9	1001	9	F	1111	15
4	0100	4	A	1010	10			

Layer 2 Protocols - Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

ARP was defined by RFC 826 in 1982, and is used for mapping a IPv4 address to a physical MAC address. In IPv6 the functionality of ARP is provided by the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP). When IP has a datagram to send, it must inform a Network Access protocol, such as Ethernet, of the destination's hardware address on the local network. If IP doesn't find the destination host's hardware address in the ARP cache, it uses ARP to find this information.

A continuing discussion about ARP is where Layer 2 and 3 begin and end, since it seems to almost straddle both. It is a good reminder that the OSI model is just that- a conceptual model for design and development of protocols. This is a good example (there aren't many) of where the real world is a bit less tangible and technological requirements move things beyond the roadmap given to us. In the end it is best to call it L2 and be done with it- it is most likely that the LLC invokes service calls to the MAC sublayer in order to report to the CAM table and layer 3 services

ARP - Address Resolution Protocol

Hardware	1 (Ethernet 10Mb)
Protocol:	0x0800 (IP)
Hardware Address Length:	6
Protocol Address Length:	4
Operation:	1 ARP Request
Sender Hardware Address:	00:A0:24:48:60:A5
Sender Internet Address:	172.16.10.3
Target Hardware Address:	00:00:00:00:00:00 (ignored)
Target Internet Address:	172.16.10.10

ARP related terms, (or, terms with ARP in the name)

Inverse ARP is primarily used in Frame Relay (DLCI) and ATM networks, which need the corresponding Layer 3 addresses before those virtual circuits can be used

An ARP probe is an ARP request constructed with an all-zero sender IP address. Before beginning to use an IPv4 address a host must test to see if the address is already in use, by broadcasting ARP probe packets

A gratuitous ARP announcement updates any cached entries in the ARP tables of other hosts that receive the packet. Many operating systems perform gratuitous ARP during startup. It helps in case a network card was recently changed and other hosts need to update ARP caches. Gratuitous ARP is also needed in teaming network cards, and can be used to defend link-local IP addresses in zeroconf.

ARP spoofing - ARP has no authentication, so replies can come from systems other than the one with the required address. ARP spoofing is where a system impersonates another system's address with the aim of intercepting data bound for that system, resulting in man-in-the-middle and DoS attacks. An ARP proxy is a legitimate system which answers the ARP request on behalf of another system for which it will forward traffic, such as for a dialup internet service.

ARP mediation is WAN resolution of Layer 2 addresses through a Virtual Private Wire Service (VPWS) when different resolution protocols are used circuits- e.g., Ethernet on one end and Frame Relay on the other. In IPv4, each Provider Edge (PE) device discovers the IP address of the locally attached Customer Edge (CE) device and distributes that IP address to the corresponding remote PE device. Then each PE device responds to local ARP requests using the IP address of the remote CE device and the hardware address of the local PE device.

In IPv6, ARP is replaced with NDP (Network Discovery Protocol) - each device discovers the IP address of both local and remote CE devices and then intercepts local Neighbor Discovery (ND) and Inverse Neighbor Discovery (IND) packets and forwards them to the remote PE device.

Layer 2 - Switching basic decision-making, other issues

IEEE 802.1D/w Spanning Tree puts each port in forward or blocking state. Ports in a blocking/ discarding state won't process any frames except STP messages - the switch physically receives the frame on blocked port, but ignores it.

That being said, for all ports in a forwarding state:

If destination address is:

- same as source? Ignore (filter).
- known? Forward to correct port
- unknown? LEARN: map the source MAC address to its port number. Flood out all ports except entry

Address learning:

- When flooded out, source MAC is added to table, but the destination will NOT be learned.

For each received frame, examine the source MAC, note the interface.

- If not in table, add- set inactivity timer to 0.

- If it is in table, reset the inactivity timer for the entry to 0.

On new frame, if MAC-to-port is different than previously recorded, it will be updated.

- MAC table instability (info repeatedly updated erroneously from loops) is prevented by STP

Modes of Layer 2 forwarding:

Store-and-forward - receive all bits in the frame and check the FCS before forwarding.

Fragment-free - receiving the first 64 bytes first to weed out collision-damaged frames.

Cut-through - checks dest MAC, forwards frame ASAP -reduces latency but no FCS check (later versions check for QoS and/or ACLs)

If asked, the three switch Layer 2 functions: address learning, forward/filter, loop avoidance (STP)

Forward vs Filter simply refers to: if MAC table says for Port 1, not port 2, forward to port 1, filter from port 2.

Is looked at by some people as two decisions:

1. Forwarding decision: to send it to the right port (associated with that MAC address)

2. Filtering decision: to NOT send it out the other ports.

IP Routing basic decisionmaking:

Four-step process of how routers route (forward) packets

Layer 2 first- check FCS. If errors occurred, discard the frame.

Trash the old layer 2 header and trailer, leaving the IP packet, which is sent to Layer 3.

Compare to the routing table, and find the outgoing interface of the router (next-hop IP).

Encapsulate into new layer 2 header/trailer for the outgoing interface and forward the frame. (how does it know the destination MAC? The ARP table)

Goals of IP routing protocols

- dynamically learn and fill the routing table with a route to each subnet on the network.
- choose and place the best route in the routing table.
- notice when table's routes are no longer valid, remove them. Get new one from neighbor.
- work quickly - for fast convergence time and routing updates
- prevent routing loops.

Layer 2: Broadcast and Collision Domains - FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF

1. Each router port is a separate broadcast domain (also a separate collision domain)

2. Each port on a switch (or bridge) is a separate collision domain.

3. Everything connected to a hub is in one collision domain (switches break up collision domains).

Collision domains: sending and receiving data frames at same time is not supported (half-duplex).

If devices send at the same time the frames collide, a jamming signal (backoff) is sent, devices set timers to try again, which slows everything down. Rely on CSMA/CD to try to mediate collisions.

Routers move traffic between IP networks/subnets. Routers also separate broadcast domains.

If a router interconnects two networks, each network is its own broadcast domain

If a router has two ports in the same subnet, those are two different broadcast domains.

Because, routers do not forward layer 2 broadcast traffic

- At a home office: adding collision domains means increased bandwidth. With a hub (1 collision domain), only one PC can send at a time, for a theoretical maximum capacity of 100 Mbps for the entire LAN. Replace with a switch, and you get 100 Mbps per link, for a total of 1000 Mbps (1Gbps) and the ability to use full-duplex on each link, effectively doubling the capacity to 2000 Mbps (2Gbps)

Ping (Packet Internet Groper)

The Ping program uses the alphabet in the data portion of the packet as a payload, typically around 100 bytes by default, unless, of course, you are pinging from a Windows device, which thinks the alphabet stops at the letter W

Controlling the Source IP Address with Extended ping

```
R1# ping  
Protocol [ip]:  
Target IP address: 172.16.2.101  
Repeat count [5]:  
Datagram size [100]:  
Timeout in seconds [2]:  
Extended commands [n]: y  
Source address or interface: 172.16.1.1  
Type of service [0]:  
Set DF bit in IP header? [no]:  
Validate reply data? [no]:  
Data pattern [0xABCD]:  
Loose, Strict, Record, Timestamp, Verbose[none]:  
Sweep range of sizes [n]:  
Type escape sequence to abort.  
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 172.16.2.101, timeout is 2 seconds: Packet sent with a source address of 172.16.1.1  
!!!!  
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

Typically you'll see three values at the end separated with the slash "/" the minimum, average, and maximum RTT

Cisco ping Return Codes:

- ! - Each exclamation point indicates receipt of an ICMP echo reply. The ping completed successfully.
- . - Each period indicates one timed out - blocked by access list or firewall, connectivity problem, or "unreachable" error
- U - An ICMP unreachable message was received. - A router along the path did not have a route to the destination address.
- C - An ICMP source quench message was received. - A device along the path- may be receiving to much traffic.
- & - An ICMP time exceeded message was received. - A routing loop may have occurred.

Demystifying the lost first ping

When pinging a directly-attached host (end-station) from a router, it's quite common to lose the first reply, as shown in the following example (the same symptom might occur when pinging a remote host that has been inactive).

Actually, it's not the reply that was lost, the request was never sent out. Whenever a router has to send a packet to the next-hop (or directly attached destination) that has no entry in the ARP table, the ARP request is sent out, but the original packet is unconditionally dropped.

Debugging ARP requests while using the ping command:

```
Router2#show arp  
Protocol Address      Age (min)    Hardware Addr        Type      Interface  
Internet 10.0.0.6      -            0016.c876.8b38    ARPA     FastEthernet0/0  
Internet 10.0.0.5      0            0016.c7fe.f150    ARPA     FastEthernet0/0
```

```
Router2#debug arp  
ARP packet debugging is on  
Router2#ping 10.0.0.10  
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.10, timeout is 2 seconds:  
!!!!  
Success rate is 80 percent (4/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/4 ms  
08:26:21: IP ARP: creating incomplete entry for IP address: 10.0.0.10 interface FastEthernet0/0  
08:26:21: IP ARP: sent req src 10.0.0.6 0016.c876.8b38, dst 10.0.0.10 0000.0000.0000 FastEthernet0/0  
08:26:21: IP ARP: rcvd rep src 10.0.0.10 000c.29a7.8ade, dst 10.0.0.6 FastEthernet0/0
```

ICMPv6 includes a different set of message types that are particularly useful when performing local network testing. Type 128 (echo request) messages, which you can use to remotely sweep IPv6 networks.

Firewalk first calculates the distance to the gateway, and then sends packets destined for the target with a TTL that is one hop beyond. Based on the responses, the tool is able to map the filtering policy.

- If an ICMP type 11 code 0 (TTL exceeded in transit) message is received, the packet passed through the filter and a response was later generated.
 - If the packet is dropped without comment, it was probably done at the firewall.
 - If an ICMP type 3 code 13 (communication administratively prohibited) message is received, a simple filter such as a router ACL is being used.

If the packet is dropped without comment, this doesn't necessarily mean that traffic to the target host and port is filtered. Some firewalls know that the packet is due to expire and will send the expired message whether the policy allows the packet or not.

Traceroute

Cisco traceroute sends 3 UDP datagrams for each hop- first, three with a TTL field value set to 1 to cause the datagram to "timeout" as soon as it hits the first router, which responds with ICMP "time exceeded". Next, three more with the TTL value set to 2 for the second router, and so forth, incrementing the TTL for each hop. Since these datagrams try to access an invalid port (default 33434) at the destination host, the host will respond with ICMP "port unreachable" which tells the program to finish (Windows destinations send an ICMP echo reply back)

Standard traceroute defaults to using UDP on Linux, ICMP echo on Windows, but the principle is the same.

On Cisco IOS, running ping or traceroute without an IP address will allow the option to use extended versions of the programs. This will query for source and destination IPs in order to run those programs between specified gateways to check routing, troubleshoot routing loops, or packet loss; to determine the type of connectivity problem, to narrow down where the problem occurs.

Cisco IOS Extended Traceroute example:

Router A#traceroute

Protocol [ip]:

Target IP address: 192.168.40.2

!--- The address to which the path is traced.

Source address: 172.16.23.2

Numeric display [n]:

Timeout in seconds [3]:

Probe count [3]:

Minimum Time to Live [1]:

Maximum Time to Live [30]:

Port Number [33434]:

Loose, Strict, Record, Timestamp, Verbose[none]:

Type escape sequence to abort.

Tracing the route to 192.168.40.2

1 172.31.20.2 16 msec 16 msec 16 msec

2 172.20.10.2 28 msec 28 msec 32 msec

3 192.168.40.2 32 msec 28 msec *

Cisco IOS traceroute returns these codes, here's their possible cause.

nn msec - This gives, for each node, the round-trip time (in milliseconds) for the specified number of probes

* - The probe timed out. - A device along the path either did not receive the probe or did not reply with an ICMP "packet life exceeded" message.

A - Administratively prohibited. - a firewall or router, may be blocking the probe and possibly other or all traffic; check access lists.

Q - Source quench. - A device along the path may be receiving too much traffic; check input queues.

H - An ICMP unreachable message has been received. A routing loop may have occurred.

TCP Traceroute

Both traceroute and tcptraceroute work on the same basic principle. Employing a tool for performing TCP traceroute is becoming a more popular option since it is less likely to be filtered. All will generate ICMP error messages when the TTL expires. Some firewalls block the "time exceeded" ICMP packets. SYN packets are used in TCP traceroutes since firewalls will often block other TCP packets that aren't part of an established connection.

intrace waits for an existing TCP connection. When it sees a connection it will send short-lived packets which appear as being part of the observed connection. intrace can do that because it has seen the packets, and so knows the IP addresses, ports and sequence numbers. The short-lived packets are adjusted so that they will not disrupt the TCP connection (i.e. they are simple "ACK" packets with no data by themselves, so the destination OS will simply ignore them).

Classic traceroute rely on ICMP type 11 (Time exceeded) responses from each hop along the route. If ICMP type 11 responses are being blocked by your firewall, traceroute will not work. These packets are inbound, not outbound.

TCP SYN packets will cause either a RST packet or a SYN ACK packet in response when they reach their destination. There is more about those sort of TCP interactions and what they mean in the section on scanning

It is possible to get ICMP type 3 code 4 responses back instead of ICMP type 11 responses if you send a large packet with the "Do not fragment" flag set, however this is likely only to allow you to find the hop with the smallest MTU. You will normally only get this sort of response from one hop along the route. Not all of them.

Windows has the pathping utility, and there is also MTR (<https://github.com/White-Tiger/WinMTR>). Older tools include vtrace and Cheops which you may need to use archive.org's WayBackMachine to find.

Simple routing and switching round trip HostA (172.16.10.2) pings HostB (172.16.20.5) through one router

Note: this example ignores the issue mentioned in the ping section "what happens to the first ping?"

1- ICMP's ping process creates its echo request payload, which is simply the alphabet in the data field. It's handed to IP to form a packet. At a minimum, this packet contains an IP source address, an IP destination address, and a Protocol field with 0x01

3- IP checks to see if the destination IP address is a device on the local LAN or on a remote network. Since the destination device is on a remote network, the packet needs to be sent to the default gateway, so it finds it in the routing table. *Remember that hardware addresses are always local, so...*

4- It finds the default GW is 172.16.10.1, so the ARP cache is checked for the MAC if it has already been resolved. If the ARP cache doesn't have it, an ARP broadcast is sent out on local network for 172.16.10.1, router responds, and the cache updated with the info and an activity timer for it.

It turns out that the ARP table had it, and says it's the router's interface with the MAC address on Ethernet0, so its activity timer is reset to 0, and the packet is *then* ready to be handed to a different part of the Data Link layer for framing.

5- With destination gateway and source MAC addresses, ether-type (0x0800 for IP) and the packet payload, the LAN driver is used to provide media access via the type of LAN (Ethernet), a frame is then generated, adding the FCS field (the result of the CRC).

6- Frame is given to the wire bit-by-bit. **THE FRAME HAS FINALLY ENTERED THE NETWORK**

7- All devices on the collision domain get the bits, rebuild the frame, and run a CRC to compare the FCS field for integrity. If it fails the integrity check it's discarded. (*note: this takes account if we are in a collision domain*)

8- If it passes, the destination MAC is checked to see if it matches its own address. Eth0 on the router gets it, checks the ether-type field and gives the enclosed packet to IP (the rest is discarded).

9- IP on the router checks the packet header for errors (it doesn't run a complete CRC like the Data Link layer does on the frame). Since the packet's destination IP doesn't match any of the addresses configured on the router's interfaces, the router will look in its routing table. *If there is no entry for the network 172.16.20.0 the packet will be discarded immediately and an ICMP message will be sent back to the originating device with a destination network unreachable message.*

In this case it was found- the packet is routed to the exit interface (Eth1) for that subnet. Since the routing table shows "directly connected," no routing protocols are needed.

10- As the IP layer hands the packet to Layer 2, the MAC of HostB's IP address is either found in the ARP cache, or an ARP request is sent out for it (just as before in steps 3-6). We can safely say that the IP packet has been switched to a buffer before it's framing. It's framed, and sent out, just like in steps 5 and 6. **THE FRAME HAS LEFT THE ROUTER**

11- HostB receives the frame and immediately runs a CRC. If the result matches the information in the FCS field, the hardware destination address will be then checked next. If the host finds a match, the Ether-Type field is finally checked to determine the Network layer protocol that the packet belongs with (IPv4), and it is passed up the stack.

12- IP gets the packet, runs a CRC on the header, checks the destination address and sees its own address, so it checks Protocol field to find out which Layer 4 protocol gets the payload segment. **DESTINATION REACHED!**

13- The payload is handed to ICMP, which understands that this is an echo request. ICMP responds to this by immediately discarding the packet and generating a new payload as an echo reply.

14- A packet is then created including the source and destination addresses, Protocol field, and payload. The destination device is now HostA.

15- Steps 3-6 are repeated on HostB: determining it goes to the gateway's IP address, getting the gateway's MAC, framing it, and sending it to wire for the router.

16- The router's Eth1 interface receives the bits and builds a frame. The CRC is run, and the FCS field is checked to make sure the answers match. It's handed to IP and steps 7-10 are repeated with destination swapped to HostA

17- To route the packet, the device knows to get to network 172.16.10.0 it should exit Eth0, and the MAC for 172.16.10.2 is already cached from the originating trip to HostB, so it builds a frame and sends it out on the wire. **(LEAVES THE ROUTER)**

18- The destination host receives the frame, runs a CRC, checks the destination MAC, then looks at the Ether-Type field, saying to hand it off at the Network layer, it checks the Protocol field which says ICMP, and ICMP determines the packet to be an ICMP echo reply. ICMP acknowledges that it has received the reply by sending an exclamation point (!) to the user interface. ICMP then attempts to send four more echo requests to the destination host.

Fast Subnetting Examples - Subnet and Binary Practice

Remember to always place largest subnets first. How many hosts and how many subnets?

Class C Subnetting - Subnetting for Hosts

You are given 192.168.1.0 to start with, and are being asked for:

- one subnet that contains at least 50 usable IP addresses.
- two subnets that contain at least 14 usable IP addresses each.

Start all this with the biggest subnet. Consider our bit increments:

We need 50, so draw the line where 50 is:

128	64	■	32	16	8	4	2	1
								■

$32+16+8+4+2+1=63$ This fits so we use it. That 64 marks where our first network bit is.

Our block ends at 192.168.1.63 (our broadcast address) and our first network is 192.168.1.0

What's the subnet mask? Add the unused bits: $128+64=192$. The subnet mask is 255.255.255.192
CIDR/ Prefix length? 8 8 8 2 Count all the network bits- 26, $8+8+8+(128 \text{ and } 64)=2$ bits)

So, this subnet is 192.168.1.0/26 Part 1 is done, move on to part 2:

Second subnet starts at 192.168.1.64

We need 14, so draw the line:

128	64	32	16	■	8	4	2	1
								■

$8+4+2+1=15$ - This fits so we use it. That 16 marks where our first network bit is.

64 is this new network number, and with a block of 15, its broadcast is 192.168.1.79

What's the subnet mask? Add unused bits: $128+64+32+16=240$ The subnet mask is 255.255.255.240
CIDR/ Prefix length? 8 8 8 4 Count all the network bits- 28 (128, 64, 32, 16= 4 bits)
So, our second subnet is 192.168.1.64/28 Part 2 is done, and we are almost finished

Third subnet starts at 192.168.1.80

We need 14 again:

128	64	32	16	■	8	4	2	1
								■

$8+4+2+1=15$ - Just like the last step

Our block ends at 192.168.1.95 (our broadcast address)

What's the subnet mask? Add unused bits: $128+64+32+16=240$ The subnet mask is 255.255.255.240
CIDR/ Prefix length? 8 8 8 4 Count all the network bits- 28 (128, 64, 32, 16= 4 bits)
So, our third subnet is 192.168.1.80/28, and we are done!

Next block available to continue begins at 192.168.1.96 so you have 96-255 to use in the future (block of 159 numbers for the 192.168.1.0 network we own)

You may be wondering... The line for subnet 1 was drawn between 64 and 32. 128 and 64 were included in counting up network bits when we determine subnet mask and the CIDR, but 64 is the block size, which is the 7th bit, not the 6th. Why?
The reason for that is that the 7th bit is now designated to chop up into networks, so it's a network bit. It has been appropriated (i.e. "borrowed") from the host bits. The block size is designated by the number to the left of where we draw the line.

Class B Subnetting - Subnetting for Hosts

You are given 170.70.0.0 to start with, and are being asked for:

- two subnets that contain 1000 usable IP addresses.
- one subnet that contains 500 usable IP addresses.
- one subnet that contains 100 usable IP addresses.

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1	
				■				

So what we were handed and are starting off with 170.70.0.0, 255.255.0.0

To make the first subnet of 1000 hosts. We need to add the 3rd octet in the diagram like this:

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
								■								

1023 - This fits so let's use it. *That 1024 marks where our first network bit is.*

This uses 10 host bits (8 bits for the 4th octet + 2 used in the 3rd= 10)

32 bits-10 bits= 22 bits for the network 8 8 6 0 - 170.70.0.0/22

The line was drawn in the 3rd octet going up to the 1023 mark.

/22 has a block size of 4, a subnet of 252 (256-4)

The subnet mask is = 255.255.252.0

Broadcast is 170.70.3.255 - the next network is 170.70.4.0

The second subnet starts at 170.70.4.0.

We need 1000 hosts again- what we just did, so this is easy. Just update the network number with what we already figured out. We know this is a /22 subnet with increments of 4 as the block size.

Subnet mask is 255.255.252.0

Broadcast is 170.70.7.255 - the next network is 170.70.8.0

Third subnet starts at 170.70.8.0

To make the subnet of 500 hosts:

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
								■								

511 - This fits so we use it. This equals 9 bits, leaving 23 remaining (32 bits-9 bits)

CIDR notation? 8 8 7 0 Network bits used- 23 (512 leaves 7 bits in 3rd octet)

170.70.8.0/23 with a block size of 2

Subnet mask is 255.255.254.0

Broadcast is 170.70.9.255 - the next network is 170.70.10.0

Fourth subnet: 170.70.10.0

To make the subnet of 100 hosts:

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
								■								

127 - This fits so we use it. This equals 7 bits, leaving 25 remaining (32 bits-7 bits)

CIDR notation? 8 8 8 1 Count the bits used- 25 (128 leaves 1 bits in 4rd octet)

170.70.10.0/25 - We didn't even have to touch the third octet for this one.

128 is the 25nd bit, thus subnet mask is 255.255.255.128

Broadcast is 170.70.10.127

Next network will start at 170.70.10.128. 170.70.10.128 through 170.70.244.128 are still unused!

At the beginning, we determined how many bits, which is the first step. Here it was easy- we found where we could fit 50 bits on the bit counting line, but notice that in a way we counted from the right side. When provisioning networks instead of hosts, we have to figure out how many bits will do the job, and then count from the LEFT, adding to the original network numbers, borrowing from host bits.

Class B Subnetting - Subnetting for Networks

We get a class B: 140.78.0.0, 255.255.0.0; asked for 29 networks. Add 2 for NetID and BC is 31

First question! How many bits? $1+2+4+8+16 = 31 = \text{uses } 5 \text{ bits}$

Count 5 bits (from the LEFT for networks) and borrow from the host bits to extend network bits:

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

Our new starting subnet mask is going to be 255.255.248.0 (the 5 bits)

This is our first network - 140.78.8.0

140.78.	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is our first network's broadcast- 140.78.15.255

140.78.	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	•	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Increment 1 binary in the network portion (the left). This is our second network - 140.78.16.0

140.78.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is our second network's broadcast- 140.78.23.255

140.78.	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	•	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Increment 1 binary in the network portion. This is our third network- 140.78.24.0

140.78.	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is our third network's broadcast- 140.78.31.255

140.78.	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	•	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Increment 1 binary in the network portion. This is our fourth network - 140.78.32.0

140.78.	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is our fourth network's broadcast- 140.78.39.255

140.78.	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	•	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

...And so forth. We begin to see the pattern- multiples of 8, our dividing line gave us the block size

Net ID	1st address	Last address	Broadcast
140.78.8.0	140.78.8.1	140.78.15.254	140.78.15.255
140.78.16.0	140.78.16.1	140.78.16.254	140.78.23.255
140.78.24.0	140.78.24.1	140.78.31.254	140.78.31.255
140.78.32.0	140.78.32.1	140.78.39.254	140.78.39.255

What's the last network you can give out? 140.78.240.0:

140.78.	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

It's broadcast is 140.78.247.255

140.78.	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	•	1	1	1	1	1	1
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Class B Subnetting - Subnetting for Networks - Example 2

We are given a Class B: 150.9.0.0, BC: 255.255.0.0

We are asked for 10 networks- always add 2 = We really need 12; for networks count from the LEFT

How many bits? 12, so $1100=12 = 4$ bits. Count 4 from the left - New magic number is 16

Our new starting subnet mask is going to be 255.255.240.0 (the 5 bits)

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
-------	-------	------	------	------	------	-----	-----	---	-----	----	----	----	---	---	---	---

This is our first network - 150.9.16.0

150.9.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
--------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is our first network's broadcast- 150.9.31.255

150.9.	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
--------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

The last example walked through discovering our networks and we saw the pattern for block of 8 bits repeating. Below it is the same thing using the new info, but the block is 16.

Net ID 1st address Last address Broadcast

150.9.0.0	150.9.0.1	150.9.15.254	150.9.15.255
150.9.16.0	150.9.16.1	150.9.31.254	150.9.31.255
150.9.32.0	150.9.32.1	150.9.47.254	150.9.47.255

150.9.48.0, 150.9.64.0, 150.9.80.0, 150.9.96.0, 150.9.112.0, 150.9.128.0, 150.9.144.0, 150.9.160.0...

What if...? Subnet Masks and borrowing from the fourth octet

What if we instead were working with 10 bits instead of 4? How do we deal with the subnet mask?

Remember we are given a Class B: 150.9.0.0

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
-------	-------	------	------	------	------	-----	-----	---	-----	----	----	----	---	---	---	---

This is our first network - 150.9.0.0- 150.9.0.63

150.9.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
--------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Net ID 1st address Last address Broadcast

150.9.0.0	150.9.0.1	150.9.0.62	150.9.0.63
150.9.64.0	150.9.0.64	150.9.0.126	150.9.1.127

Use 64 (the 7th bit), 255.255.255.192 - since we are borrowing from the 4th octet it might look like a class C, but we can ultimately see by the first octet of the address (150) that this is Class B, but it's the net/host boundary of the address dictates the subnet mask.

Class B Subnetting - Subnetting for Hosts - Review

We are given a Class B: 160.12.0.0, BC: 255.255.0.0 We are asked for 4080 hosts so add 2= 4082 Bits

So we need 12 bits- for hosts count from the RIGHT

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	•	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
-------	-------	------	------	------	------	-----	-----	---	-----	----	----	----	---	---	---	---

Subnet mask is 240 (128+64+32+16) "Magic number" is 16

160.12.0.0... 160.12.15.255

160.12.16.0... 160.12.31.255

160.12.32.0, 160.12.48.0, 160.12.64.0, etc

Class C Subnetting - Subnetting for Networks - Review

We are given 201.9.6.0 told to make 25 subnets- add 2 and it's 27.

27 = 5 bits - count from the left

201.9.6.	0	0	0	0	1											
----------	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

CIDR is /29 and 255.255.255.248 mask

Network IDs are 201.9.6.8, 201.9.6.16, 201.9.6.24, 201.9.6.32, 201.9.6.40 ... etc.

Variable Length Subnet Mask - VLSM #1

Rule 1: Always make networks from highest to lowest in size

We have a starting address of 172.16.0.0

We need 4 subnets, sized with 8000, 1000, 400, and 100 hosts respectively.

First net of 8000 hosts- how many bits? 13 Bits start with the originating network ID (172.16.0.0) *Count from the right:*

32768 16384 8192 4096 2048 1024 512 256 • 128 64 32 16 8 4 2 1



172.16.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

We get 172.16.0.0/19 and know the next network ID is 172.16.32.0.

So, the first VLSM block is 172.16.0.0/19, mask is 255.255.224.0, and broadcast of 172.16.31.255

Second network: 1000 hosts. Line is now between 1024 and 512 (10 bits).

Depending how you do yours, you can leave the 32 marker from the first network turned on, but move our dividing line to the new spot. So we start with 172.16.32.0

172.16.	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

32768 16384 8192 4096 2048 1024 512 256 • 128 64 32 16 8 4 2 1



This VLSM block is 172.16.32.0/22, subnet mask is 255.255.252.0, with a broadcast of 172.16.35.255

Third network: 400 hosts - starts at 172.16.36.0

172.16.	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Do the same thing we just did with previous markers.

Line is between 256 and 512

32768 16384 8192 4096 2048 1024 512 256 • 128 64 32 16 8 4 2 1



This is a /23 subnet (8+8+7). We know from $32 + 4 + 2 = 38$ that the next network ID is 172.16.38.0

This VLSM block is 172.16.36.0/23, subnet mask is 255.255.254.0, with a broadcast of 172.16.37.255

Fourth network: 100 hosts - starts at 172.16.38.0

172.16.	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

The line is between 128 and 64 we are now borrowing host bits from the 4th octet

128 64 32 16 8 4 2 1



This is a /25 subnet (8+8+9). 128 is the next network ID

This VLSM block is 172.16.38.0/25, subnet mask is 255.255.128.0, with a broadcast of 172.16.127.255

Hosts	Net ID	Last address	Broadcast
8000	172.16.0.0	172.16.31.254	172.16.31.255
1000	172.16.32.0	172.16.35.254	172.16.35.255
400	172.16.36.0	172.16.37.254	172.16.37.255
100	172.16.38.0	172.16.38.126	172.16.38.127

Next network would begin at 172.16.38.128 for future space (room for about 216 /24 networks or in ip addressed formatted binary 00000000.00000000.11010010.10000000)

Variable Length Subnet Mask - VLSM #2

140.58.0.0 is our starting IP. We need networks that are big enough to cover these host blocks:
Blocks for 7000, 2500, 1800; and we need 2 blocks of 900, a 500 block, and 2 tiny two-host networks.

First network: 7000 hosts- how many bits? 13 Bits:

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	• 128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

So we have this- start with the originating network ID:

140.58.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is a /19 subnet (8+8+3).

This VLSM block is 140.58.0.0/19, subnet mask is 255.255.254.0, with a broadcast of 140.58.31.255

So we have 140.58.32.0 as a starting network ID:

140.58.	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Second network: 2500 hosts. Line is now between 2048 and 4096 (12 bits)

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	• 128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

This is a /20 subnet (8+8+4). 32 + 16 (48) is the next network ID

This VLSM block is 140.58.32.0/20, subnet mask is 255.255.240.0, with a broadcast of 140.58.47.255

So we have 140.58.48.0 as a starting network ID:

140.58.	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Third network: 1800 hosts. Line is now between 1024 and 2048(11 bits)

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	• 128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

This is a /21 subnet (8+8+5). 32 + 16 + 8 (56) is the next network ID

This VLSM block is 140.58.48.0/21, subnet mask is 255.255.248.0, with a broadcast of 140.58.55.255

So we have 140.58.56.0 as a starting network ID:

140.58.	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Fourth network: 900 hosts. Line is now between 512 and 1024 (10 bits)

32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	• 128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

This is a /22 subnet (8+8+6). 32 + 16 + 8 + 4 (60) is the next network ID

This VLSM block is 140.58.56.0/22, subnet mask is 255.255.252.0, with a broadcast of 140.58.59.255

So we have 140.58.60.0 as a starting network ID:

140.58.	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0
---------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Fifth network: also 900 hosts. Line is between 512 and 1024 (10 bits) again (see 4th network just above for diagram)

Ok- we need to draw our line, but it's already at the spot we need to put it. The interval hasn't changed so add a 4 to the network. The number line is just a workspace to help us keep track of things, so it's not a big deal.

This is a /22 subnet (8+8+6). 32 + 16 + 8 + 4 + 4 (64) is the next network ID

This block is 140.58.60.0/22, mask is 255.255.252.0, broadcast of 140.58.63.255; next network number is 140.58.64.0

If you are doing this on paper/ by hand it can get messy and you may have 172.16.00111100.00000000 down from drawing the number line over and over. Clean up the 64 in the 3rd octet like this since it is 64: 172.16.01000000.00000000

Subnet Shortcuts

Using binary AND: 1 and 1 = 1, all others = 0 (see below)

What is the network number of the address 192.168.100.115 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.240?

192.168.100.115 = 11000000.10101000.01100100.01110011

255.255.255.240 = 11111111.11111111.11111111.11110000

ANDed result = 11000000.10101000.01100100.01110000 = 192.168.100.112

192.168.100.115 belongs to the 192.168.100.112 network when a mask of 255.255.255.240 is used.

It gets simpler: octets of the addresses with a common 255 or 0 can be ignored

What's the broadcast for the IP address 192.168.100.164 if it has a subnet mask of 255.255.255.248?

192.168.100.164 = 192.168.100.10100100

255.255.255.248 =11111000

ANDed result = 192.168.100.10100000 = 192.168.100.160 (here's our subnet number)

Separate the network bits from the host bits:

255.255.255.248 = /29 = the first 29 bits are network bits - so the last three are host bits

----10100 **000**. Change all host bits to 1, so it's ----10100111 = 192.168.100.167

The broadcast of 192.168.100.164 is 192.168.100.167 when the subnet mask is 255.255.255.248.

To what network does 131.186.227.43 belong, if its subnet mask is 255.255.240.0?

Based on the two shortcut rules, the answer should be 131.186.???.0

So now you only need to convert one octet to binary for the ANDing process:

227 = 11100011

240 = 11110000

11100000 = 224 Therefore, the answer is 131.186.224.0

What subnet does this belong to?

What subnet does 192.168.12.78/29 belong to?

Our mask is a /29. The next boundary is 32. So 32-29=3.

Now $2^3 = 8$ which gives us our block size i.e. 2 to the power of 3 equals 8.

We have borrowed from the last octet as the 29th bit is in the last octet. We start from zero and count up in our block size.

Therefore it follows that the subnets are:

192.168.12.0

192.168.12.8

192.168.12.16

...

192.168.12.72

192.168.12.80

Our address is 192.168.12.78 so it must sit on the 192.168.12.72 subnet.

What subnet does 172.16.116.4/19 sit on?

Our mask is /19 and our next boundary is 24. Therefore 24-19=5. The block size is $2^5 = 32$.

We have borrowed into the third octet as bit 19 is in the third octet so we count up our block size in that octet. The subnets are:

172.16.0.0

172.16.32.0

172.16.64.0

172.16.96.0

172.16.128.0

Our address is 172.16.116.4 so it must sit on the 172.16.96.0 subnet.

What subnet does 10.34.67.234/12 sit on?

Our mask is 12. Our next boundary is 16. Therefore 16-12=4. $2^4=16$ which gives us our block size.

We have borrowed from the second octet as bit 12 sits in the second octet so we count up the block size in that octet. The subnets are:

10.0.0.0

10.16.0.0

10.32.0.0

10.48.0.0

.....etc

Our address is 10.34.67.234 which must sit on the 10.32.0.0 subnet.

What is the valid host range of the Nth subnet of abc.xxx.yyy.zzz/xx?

What is the valid host range of the 4th subnet of 192.168.10.0/28?

The block size is 16 since $32-28=4$ and $2^4 = 16$.

We need to count up in the block size in the last octet as bit 28 is in the last octet.

192.168.10.0
192.168.10.16
192.168.10.32
192.168.10.48
192.168.10.64

The 4th subnet is 192.168.10.48 and the host range must be 192.168.10.49 to 192.168.10.62, remembering that the subnet and broadcast address cannot be used.

What is the valid host range of the 1st subnet of 172.16.0.0/17?

The block size is 128 since $24-17=7$ and $2^7 = 128$.

We are borrowing in the 3rd octet as bit 17 is in the 3rd octet. Our subnets are:

172.16.0.0
172.16.128.0

The first subnet is 172.16.0.0 and the valid host range is 172.16.0.1 to 172.16.127.254. You must remember not to include the subnet address (172.16.0.0) and the broadcast address (172.16.127.255).

What is the valid host range of the 7th subnet of address 10.0.0.0/14?

The block size is 4, from $16-14=2$ then $2^2 = 4$.

We are borrowing in the 2nd octet, so count in the block size from zero 7 times to get the 7th subnet.

The seventh subnet is 10.24.0.0. Our valid host range must be 10.24.0.1 to 10.27.255.254 again remembering not to include our subnet (10.24.0.0) and the broadcast address (10.27.255.255).

10.0.0.0
10.4.0.0.0
10.8.0.0.0
...
10.20.0.0.0
10.24.0.0

Dotted decimal mask? What's the block size?

A mask of 255.255.192.0 - you would simply count up in $256-192 = 64$ in the third octet.

Or 255.224.0.0 - block size is $256-224=32$ in the second octet.

Question: You are designing a subnet mask for the 10.0.0.0 network. You want 3800 subnets with up to 3800 hosts on each subnet. What subnet mask should you use?

Answer: 255.255.240.0

Question: How many subnets and hosts per subnet can you get from the network 172.29.0.0 255.255.254.0?

Answer: 128 subnets and 510 hosts

Just memorize how many items you get for each number of bits (subtract two for hosts)

000000000001 = 2 (1)
000000000011 = 4 (2)
000000000111 = 8 (3)
000000001111 = 16 (4)
000000011111 = 32 (5)
000000111111 = 64 (6)
000001111111 = 128 (7)
000111111111 = 256 (8)
001111111111 = 512 (9)
011111111111 = 1024 (10)
011111111111 = 2048 (11)
111111111111 = 4096 (12)

If you can't remember what one is, just remember it's twice the number of the one before it (or halve the number after it if you're counting down). There's no math, tricks, etc. involved.

So for the first question, you'll need 12 bits for both because the value is between 2048 and 4096 (you obviously have to go with the higher value).

You can look at the other question the same way. /23 on a class B will give you 7 subnet bits and 9 host bits. 7 bits is 128 and 9 bits is 512 (minus 2 gives you 510).

Different answer:

Bits do you need to borrow to accommodate 3800 subnets?

12 bits as $2^12 = 4096$.

Your network address is a /8 by default as it is a Class A address so $8 + 12 = /20$ mask.

The second question is straightforward.

Your address is Class B so it has a default mask of /16.

255.255.254.0 is the same as /23, so $23-16=7$.

$2^7 = 128$ subnets

$(2^{(32 - 23)})-2 = 2^9-2 = 510$ hosts.

Interesting:

Question: *What is the last valid host on the subnetwork 172.25.248.0/21?*

Answer: 172.25.255.254

Subnet mask: inside an octet, mask is your current block size added to the next-highest neighboring block size (except 128 has a mask of 128)

128+64=192, 192+32=224, 224+16=240, etc:

128 192 224 240 248 252 254 255

128 64 32 16 8 4 2 1

IPv6 Overview

- IPv6 core protocol definition is RFC 2460
- RIPng, EIGRPv6, OSPFv3, ICMPv6, traceroute6, ping6, MP-BGP-4 (multicast BGP v4)
- ARP is replaced with Neighbor discovery, Neighbor solicitation/ duplicate address detection, multiprotocol router discovery and router advertisement.

IPv6 Numbering Summary:

Each character is 4 bits, in hexadecimal, so every block of 4 (a quartet) of those is 16 bits. Typically, IPv6 addresses refer to a certain length or place using the backslash notation. This diagram shows the structure of an IPv6 address to demonstrate bit placement/ordering 0-128 bits.



So, a prefix ending at the /48th bit, we can say something like 2001:1234:5678::/48 (how many bits are used)

You'll see IPv6 addresses shortened often. Here's how that works:

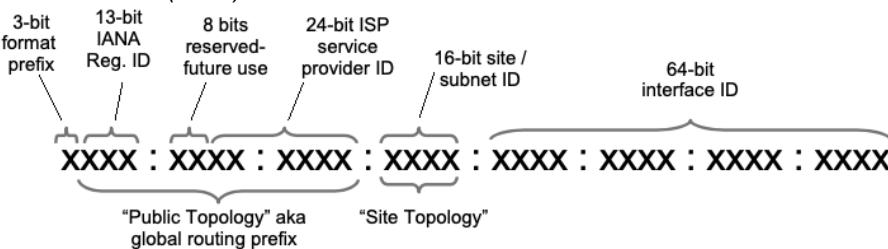
Start with expanded address: 2001:0DB8:0000:0000:FF00:0042:8329

- Remove any leading zeros - All leading zeros within each group of 4 hexadecimal digits can go. So, 0DB8 becomes DB8, 0000 becomes 0, and 0042 becomes 42 - 2001:DB8:0:0:FF00:42:8329
- Replace consecutive groups of zeros with double colons (::). You can only do this once per address, so do it to the largest grouping or the leftmost if there are a few the same size. Now we have 2001:DB8::FF00:42:8329
- This is more a style thing instead of shortening: make all letters lowercase. It helps with both ease of reading, but also with case-sensitive searching or filtering. We finally get: 2001:db8::ff00:42:8329
- Expanding is easy: inverse the rules and pad out so there are 8 quartets of 4 bits each.

Address Types

If asked what the 3 types of IPv6 addresses there typically the expected answer is unicast, multicast and anycast. It's most efficient to start off with unicast, of which there are also 3 types, one routable on the internet and the other two that have a local scope. It is also the one that has the most components so it makes the others easier.

Global Unicast (GUA)



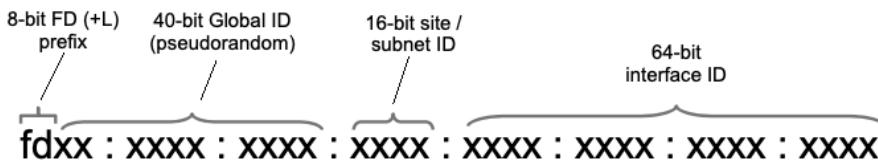
So, using the global unicast address as a starting point, take 2001:0db8:56a4:0001:0000:0000:0002 - or - 2001:db8:56a4:1::2 In this example, the generalized prefix would be 2001:0db8:56a4::/48, the subnet would be 0001, and interface ID (simplified) 2

Global unicast addresses are routable and what you need to use to do anything internet. The other two can't leave your local nets. They also can have a variety of prefixes (the other 2 have the same ones and are easy to spot). As of Feb 2023, IANA lists 2001:0000::/23 – 2c00:0000::/12 as being currently registered/available global unicast prefix blocks from regional registries (RIRs). For more info, see <https://www.iana.org/assignments/ipv6-unicast-address-assignments>.

If your company was only given one /64, you will likely have a subnet ID assigned by the ISP along with the rest of the prefix illustrated above. The interface ID represents a single interface on any given device. Typically you shouldn't need to worry about altering anything in the prefix your ISP gave you including the subnet ID. You may have been given a larger address space to work with like /32 or /48. There is a section on subnetting those after talking about addresses and such.

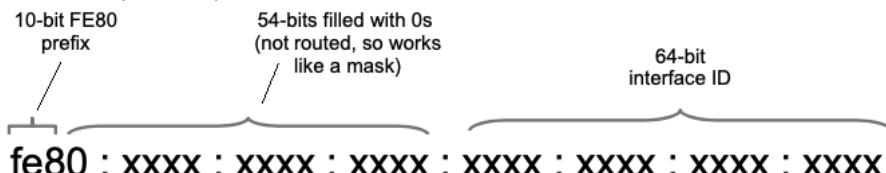
2001:1234:3333::/48 -Company B
2001:1234:3333:0001::/64 -Company B's subnet 1
2001:1234:3333:0002::/64 -Company B's subnet 2
2001:1234:3333:2::1 -A host in Company B's subnet 2

Unique Local Addresses (ULA) Unicast



Unique Locals are like the reserved IPv4 addresses for private networks (192.168.0.0/16, 172.16.0.0/12, and 10.0.0.0/8). They aren't routable over the internet (we'll talk about NAT later) but they can move around the local network, just one notch down from being "internet-ready". Generally these will start with the prefix FD. They replace an old one named "site local". These don't use the IANA/ISP's prefix like global unicast, and instead is a "random" replacement (still often called a global ID... out of habit?). This can be autogenerated by the device or done manually, which will be discussed soon.

Link Local (Unicast), fe80::/10



Link locals are auto-generated and only useful inside one subnet- can't be routed. They mainly help with the functions of neighbor discovery and next hop configuration. A great way to check out all 3 of these unicast types is to run ifconfig on your workstation.

Multicast address ff00::/8

Identifies a group of nodes or interfaces with traffic forwarded to all the nodes in the group. Addresses are all assigned out of the FF00::/8 block; also have a scope associated: link local being just like the scope of unicast LL, 'organization' with same scope as unique local, and global.

Anycast address

Identifies a group of nodes or interfaces, with traffic forwarded to the nearest node in the group. An anycast address is essentially a unicast address assigned to multiple devices with a host ID = 0000:0000:0000:0000. (Anycast addresses are not widely used today.)

Key IPv6 Multicast Addresses

ff01::1	All nodes in the interface-local	
ff02::1	All nodes in the link-local, RA/RS	
ff0X::1	All nodes address, identify the group of all IPv6 nodes	
ff0X::2	All routers	1 (interface-local), 2 (link-local), 5 (site-local)
ff01::2	All routers in the interface-local	
ff02::2	All routers in the link-local	
ff05::2	All routers in the site-local	
ff02::5	OSPFv3	2 (link-local)
ff02::6	OSPFv3 Designated Routers	2 (link-local)
ff02::9	RIP Routers	2 (link-local)
ff02::a	EIGRPv6 Routers	2 (link-local)
ff02::d	All PIM Routers	2 (link-local)
ff02::1a	All RPL Routers	2 (link-local)
ff0X::fb	mDNSv6	All scopes
ff0X::101	All NTP servers	All scopes
ff02::1:1	Link Name	2 (link-local)
ff02::1:2	All-dhcp-agents	2 (link-local)
ff02::1:3	Link-local Multicast Name Resolution	2 (link-local)
ff05::1:3	All-dhcp-servers	5 (site-local)
ff02::1:ff00:0/104	Solicited-node multicast address	2 (link-local)
ff02::2:ff00:0/104	Node Information Queries	2 (link-local)

Host Addressing: SLAAC and EUI-64 (RFC 2373)

Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC) enables hosts to generate a unique **routable** address on their own. For this the router sends out a Router Advertisement (RA) periodically, and a host can send a Router Solicitation(RS) in order to trigger an RA. The RA has the prefix and length to use, default gateway. Before using the address it makes, the host uses Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) to make sure it's unique. Since things like DNS servers aren't in RAs, DHCPv6 still has to be used. (DAD takes the place of ARP in IPv6)

For the interface ID, the host either uses a EUI-64 (Extended Unique Identifier) made from the interface's MAC address (most likely), or can optionally generate it randomly. The EUI-64 creation works like this:

1. Split the 6-byte (12-hex digit) MAC address in two down the middle.
2. Insert FFFE in between the two halves.
3. Invert the seventh bit from the beginning.

Examples:

Interface MAC address is aa12:bcbc:1234
10101010 represents the first 8 bits of the MAC address (aa) - when inverting the 7th bit it becomes 10101000.
The answer is A8 and the EUI-64 address: 2001:0db8:0:1:a812:bcff:febc:1234 EUI-64

MAC address 0b34:ba12:1234
0b in binary is 00001011, the first 8 bits of the MAC address, which then becomes 00001001
The answer is 09, and the IPv6 EUI-64 address: 2001:0db8:0:1:0934:baff:fe12:1234 EUI-64

Generating EUI-64 is usually done for us:

ipv6 address 2001:db8:1111:1::/64 eui-64

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0
  ipv6 address 2001:db8:1111:1::/64 eui-64
interface serial0/0/0
  ipv6 address 2001:db8:1111:2::/64 eui-64
show ipv6 interface brief
GigabitEthernet0/0 [up/up]
  fe80::1ff:fe01:101      <---link local, employing eui64
  2001:db8:1111:1:0:1ff:fe01:101  <---EUI64 global unicast address
Serial0/0 [up/up]
  fe80::1ff:fe01:101
  2001:db8:1111:2:0:1ff:fe01:101
```

Cisco router, setting up SLAAC

```
Router>enable
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
Router(config)#interface interface
Router(config-if)#ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix-length
Router(config-if)#no shutdown
```

Problems with EUI-64

It has been pointed out that a user cannot connect anonymously to any network if someone knows the EUI-64 interface identifier of that device, which could be exploited such as websites and apps associating different IPv6 addresses to a particular device or user (whether malicious, monitoring, or benign). It is recommended that if the host OS or router does not support autoconfig with Random Interface Identifiers, that static IPv6 address should be used. (MS Windows generates by default a random interface ID for SLAAC)

Best answer to how to make clients go random instead of using EUI-64:

<https://superuser.com/questions/243669/how-to-avoid-exposing-my-mac-address-when-using-ipv6>

Stateless and Stateful DHCPv6 in Cisco IOS

DHCPv6 Stateless mode

- provides network info not in an RA, (no IPv6 address since already provided by SLAAC).
- DNS domain name and server(s), other DHCP options.

```
ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 dhcp pool IPV6_DHCPPOOL
address prefix 2001:db8:5:10::/64
domain-name cisco.com
dns-server 2001:db8:6:6::1
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-DHCP-Stateless
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 nd other-config-flag
ipv6 dhcp server IPV6_DHCPPOOL
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
```

```

DHCPv6 Stateful aka managed mode assigns unique addresses instead of the client generating one
ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 dhcp pool IPV6_DHCPPOOL
address prefix 2001:db8:5:10::/64
domain-name cisco.com
dns-server 2001:db8:6:6::1
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-DHCP-Stateful
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
ipv6 nd prefix 2001:DB8:0:20::/64 no-advertise
ipv6 nd managed-config-flag
ipv6 nd other-config-flag
ipv6 dhcp server IPV6_DHCPPOOL

```

This interface configuration is for a Cisco IOS IPv6 router implementing stateful DHCPv6 on an external DHCP server:

```

ipv6 unicast-routing
domain-name cisco.com
dns-server 2001:db8:6:6::1
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-DHCP-Stateful
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
ipv6 nd prefix 2001:DB8:0:20::/64 no-advertise
ipv6 nd managed-config-flag
ipv6 nd other-config-flag
ipv6 dhcp_relay destination 2001:DB8:0:20::2

```

Cisco IOS Routing in IPv6

Static routing in IPv6

```

ipv6 unicast-routing
interface serial0/0/0
  ipv6 address 2001:5432:1111:4::1/64
interface serial0/0/1
  ipv6 address 2001:db8:1111:5::1/64
interface gigabitethernet0/0
  ipv6 address 2001:db8:1111:1::1/64

```

Static IPv6 with Next-Hop Address

```

!First command is on R1, listing R2's global unicast
R1(config)#ipv6 route 2001:db8:1111:2::/64 2001:db8:1111:4::2
!This command is on R2, listed R1's global unicast
R2(config)#ipv6 route 2001:db8:1111:1::/64 2001:db8:1111:4::1
!Verify routes with show ipv6 route static

```

Default Route

```

B1(config)#ipv6 route ::0 S0/0/1

```

```

show ipv6 route
show ipv6 route static
show ipv6 route local

```

OSPFv3 Routing - PID and area goes on interfaces

```

ipv6 unicast-routing
interface serial0/0/0
  no ip address
  ipv6 address 2001:abcd:1234:4::1/64
interface s0/0/1
  no ip address
  ipv6 address 2001: abcd 1234:5::1/64
interface GigabitEthernet0/0
  no ip address
  ipv6 address 2001:abcd:1234:5::1/64
ipv6 router ospf 1
  router-id 1.1.1.1

```

```

interface s0/0/0
    ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
interface s0/0/1
    ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
int gi0/0
    ipv6 ospf 1 area 0

ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 router ospf 2
    router-id 2.2.2.2
int s0/0/1
    ipv6 address 2001: abcd:1234:4::2
    ipv6 ospf 2 area 0
int gi0/0
    ipv6 address 2001:abcd:1234:2::2
    ipv6 ospf 2 area 0

show ipv6 ospf
show ipv6 protocols
show ipv6 ospf interface
show ipv6 ospf interface brief
show ipv6 ospf neighbor
show ipv6 ospf database
show ipv6 route ospf

```

Subnetting IPv6

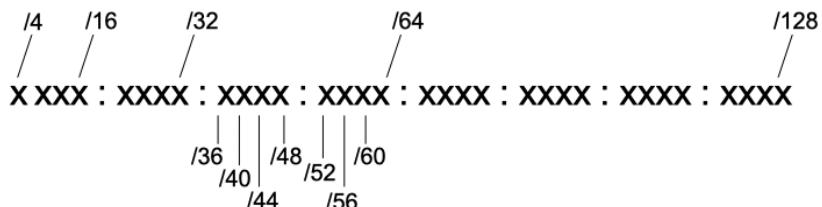
In IPv4, subnetting is done to get more addresses for hosts, optimize network distribution to help with that.

In IPv6 we have tons of addresses, so it becomes more of an issue of things like network organization.

Bulk blocks of IPv6 space purchased from RIRs are bought in lengths of /32 - /48 that can be subnetted into multiple /64 subnets. Subnets sized over /64 (like /84 or /96) are not advised since IPv6 features like addressing autoconfiguration rely on being used in a /64 subnet.

Prefix	Appearance	# of hosts	Number of /64s
/32	xxxx:xxxx::	2^{96}	4294967296
/36	xxxx:xxxx:x::	2^{92}	268435456
/40	xxxx:xxxx:xx::	2^{88}	16777216
/44	xxxx:xxxx:xxx::	2^{84}	1048576
/48	xxxx:xxxx:xxxx::	2^{80}	65536
/52	xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:x::	2^{76}	4096
/56	xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xx::	2^{72}	256
/60	xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxx::	2^{68}	16
/64	xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx::	2^{64}	1

A /64 holds 18,446,744,073,709,551,616 addresses



Switchports for Trunking and Access; related display commands

```
switchport mode {access | trunk}
switchport access vlan vlan-number -- defines the VLAN interface resides in.
switchport trunk encapsulation [dot1q | isl] -- almost always use dot1q - you may have to do this first.
switchport mode dynamic auto | dynamic desirable
    dynamic auto - becomes a trunk if the neighboring interface is set to trunk or desirable- not if auto!
    dynamic desireable - becomes a trunk if neighboring interface is set to ANY trunk mode (default!)
switchport nonegotiate - prevents generating DTP frames, or converting dynamically to anything
switchport trunk allowed vlan 4,6,12,15 --this should eliminate vlans not specifically listed
switchport trunk allowed vlan [remove 4-8 | all | none]
no switchport trunk native vlan
no switchport trunk vlan 4
switchport trunk pruning vlan {add | except | none | remove} vlan-list      Specify VLANs eligible for pruning
```

The proper way to remove VLANs from a switch

If you delete a VLAN from a switch with "no vlan 30", it won't make it disappear from the interface configs that it was previously added to- it will remain in the switchport configurations! (and cause confusion) First, run on those interfaces "switchport trunk allowed vlan remove 30' or "switchport trunk allowed vlan 10,20,40,50' Then run "no vlan 30" on the switch to remove it.

```
show interfaces [type,#] switchport - settings, status, trunking, access/voice/native VLAN
show interfaces [type,#] trunk - lists info on trunks (or the specific trunk) and the VLANs
show vlan brief, show vlan - each VLAN and all assigned interfaces, but no trunks!
show vlan [vlan] - access and trunk ports in the VLAN.
show vtp status - VTP mode, configuration and status info
```

Expected Trunking Operational Mode Based on the Configured Administrative Modes w/ DTP

Administrative Mode	Access	Dynamic Auto	Trunk	Dynamic Desirable
access	Access	Access	Access	Access
dynamic auto	Access	Access	Trunk	Trunk
trunk	Access	Trunk	Trunk	Trunk
dynamic desirable	Access	Trunk	Trunk	Trunk

Port Security

As soon as you enable port-security, it defaults to violation shutdown and a maximum of 1 MAC address.

```
switchport port-security
```

```
switchport port-security violation restrict
```

```
switchport port-security mac-address aa.bb.cc.dd.ee.ff [sticky, often used with maximum]
```

```
switchport port-security maximum value
```

the max number of MAC addresses that can be assigned - default is one.

A max value can also be set if it's a switch connected - receiving frames for multiple MACs

```
switchport port-security violation {protect | restrict | shutdown}
```

protect: unauthorized frames would just be dropped

restrict: authorized frames would be dropped and violations count toggled

shutdown: disable the interface (err-disabled - this is the default action)

```
show port-security interface
```

To open an interface shut down with port-security, you first issue "shutdown", then "no shutdown"

Inter-VLAN Routing (IVR) and Switched Virtual Interfaces (SVIs)

VLANs can't bridge without a router or Inter-VLAN Routing (IVR). Implementing trunking and Inter-VLAN routing on a layer 3 switch uses Switched Virtual Interfaces (SVIs)

If each router interface is plugged into an access link, each of the routers' interfaces would be the default gateway address for each host in each respective VLAN. IVR in the "router on a stick" (ROAS) implementation puts VLANs into a trunk to a layer 3 device, which performs the routing on logical interfaces and send back out the trunk to the switch on the proper VLAN. This can be done without the external router with a layer 3 switch, which seems a bit more efficient, and relying on the one external router creates a potential bottleneck, as well as a single point of failure.

Basic VLAN Management

Best practice dictates to always have separate voice VLANs, data VLANs, management VLAN, native VLAN, black hole VLAN, and the control plane VLAN (VLAN1). First, we need to discuss what each of these are.

"Default" VLAN and the Control Plane

The default VLAN is simply the VLAN that all the ports on a switch are members of when a switch is reset to factory defaults. All switch ports are members of the default VLAN after the initial boot of the switch. Default really means exactly that and nothing more- factory defaults.

The default VLAN for Cisco switches is VLAN 1 and you cannot rename or delete it. However, since it defaults to being both Management and Native VLAN, best practices recommend moving those roles to other separate independent VLANs. After doing so, applying shutdown will prevent all data traffic from VLAN 1, so only control protocols are permitted on VLAN 1 (DTP, VTP, STP BPDU's, PAgP, LACP, CDP, etc) Even if you prune VLAN 1 from trunks, these protocols always use VLAN 1 for controls communication.

Consider VLAN 1 to serve as a conduit only for Layer 2 control plane traffic, supporting no other traffic.

Management VLAN

A management VLAN is defined to access the management capabilities of a switch via HTTP, Telnet, SSH, but also includes SNMP and Syslog. It should be obvious why its segregation is important security-wise

Native VLAN - Untagged Frames

Native VLAN is an 802.1q trunk concept for how to transport untagged traffic, and also serves as a common identifier on opposing ends of a trunk link. Traffic from access ports unassigned to a VLAN will be untagged, as well as some legacy LAN traffic. It should be separate and distinct from all other VLANs defined in the switched LAN

By default the native VLAN is always untagged, however there is a command available on some switches where you can tell the switch to tag all VLANs including the native

- Can be manually set on either end of the trunk, using the **switchport trunk native vlan** vlan-id
- If native VLANs differ on either end, it will accidentally cause frames to leave one VLAN and enter another.
So the number of Native VLAN's can be equal to the number of trunk ports if you have a REALLY messed up network!
- Native has to do with the trunk itself, not the switch. We can only configure one native vlan per port. However, a switch with multiple ports, could have different vlans specified as the native vlan for that port. In other words, trunkport 2 could have a native vlan of 20, and trunkport 3 could have a native vlan of 30 (if you choose to be really complicated in your design). The switches on either end of the trunk just need to agree so strange things don't happen. [This can get really weird: imagine mismatched native vlans on each end of a trunk. In that case, the native vlan on one side becomes part of the same broadcast domain of a differently labeled vlan of the other end]

Consider: Switch A is connected to Switch B with a trunk. SA tags its native VLAN while SB doesn't, although it indeed uses that same VLAN number. Frames on the that vlan would flow properly from SA to SB, but not from SB to SA. While SB does not expect its traffic destined for its native vlan to be tagged, it will not reject it. Since SA is configured to expect traffic received for its native vlan to be tagged, it will discard the incoming untagged traffic. This is not quite a native vlan mismatch, but traffic will only flow in one direction.

The definition of a native vlan in 802.1q is indeed an untagged vlan. There are some exploits that can take advantage of this by stacking two sets of tags. If a user builds a frame that has an outer dot1q tag for a known native vlan and an inner tag of a vlan he wishes to attack, the first tag will be removed when the frame traverses the first trunk. The next trunk that is encountered will put the frame on the vlan that is the attack destination. As a result, there is a new command introduced to tag all frames on a trunk. This global command is "vlan tag dot1q native"

```
interface fa0/1
  switchport mode access
  switchport access vlan 10
  switchport voice vlan 20
  switchport trunk native vlan 30
Here PVID is 10, as untagged frames will get into VLAN 10.
```

```
interface fa0/2
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport access vlan 10
  switchport voice vlan 20
  switchport trunk native vlan 30
Here PVID is 30, as untagged frames will get into VLAN 30
```

Consider having a dedicated native vlan-id used on all trunks and never used on access ports to defeat double VLAN hopping attacks. On trunks, using a native vlan that is then not used can provide some L2 security advantages this makes all traffic on the trunk ports tagged. Another advantage is there is no concern about native VLAN mismatch if untagged frames are not allowed.

```
interface GigabitEthernet1/0/23
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
switchport trunk native vlan 800
switchport trunk allowed vlan 252
```

Another way is to create (for example) VLAN 100 as the native vlan. then shut it down and make all trunk ports native vlan 100.

Finally, **vlan dot1q tag native** is a global command to tag native VLAN traffic, and admit only 802.1Q tagged frames on 802.1Q trunks, dropping any untagged traffic, including untagged traffic in the native VLAN.

Black Hole VLAN - Suspended Ports

A black hole (AKA parking or holding) VLAN is defined to assign all unused ports to it so that any device traffic connecting is not allowed on trunk links, thus preventing communicating beyond the switch. It is an extra way of ordering a port inoperable. The **state suspend** command in VLAN configuration mode will cause all received frames to be dropped. Syntax - state {active | suspend}

```
S1(config)#vlan 10
S1(config-vlan)#name Data
S1(config-vlan)#vlan 20
S1(config-vlan)#name Voice
S1(config-vlan)# vlan 30
S1(config-vlan)# name Native
S1(config-vlan)#vlan 99
S1(config-vlan)#name Management
S1(config-vlan)#vlan 5
S1(config-vlan)#name Suspended
S1(config-vlan)#state suspend
S1(config-vlan)#exit
S1(config)#interface vlan 99
S1(config-if)#ip add 192.168.128.10 255.255.255.0
S1(config-if)#no shut
S1(config-if)#exit
S1(config)#ip default-gateway 192.168.128.1
S1(config)#interface range fa0/5-24
S1(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
S1(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 5
S1(config-if-range)#shutdown
S1(config)#interface fa0/1
S1(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
S1(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan 30
S1(config-if)#no shutdown
S1(config)#interface range fa0/2-4
S1(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
S1(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 10
S1(config-if-range)#switchport voice vlan 20
S1(config-if-range)#no shutdown
```

VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP)

Designed as a method to manage VLANs across a large numbers of switches: addition, deletion, and renaming from a central point of control, and all switches participating can use any related VLANs. Add a VLAN on the server and it gets set up on others. Not used as much in modern networks, Cisco says best practice is having switches in "off" or "transparent" modes; you may never see it but may find it and want to disable or otherwise manage it.

A switch can belong to just one management domain, and there is no communication between domains.
VTP advertisements contain info about the domain itself (including revision number), it's VLANs and their info.

VTP Modes: `vtp mode {server | client | transparent | off}`

Server mode (is default)

- full control over management of its domain. Each domain should have at least one server
- advertises updates to other switches in the domain, receives info to synchronize domain members
- The first server defined in a network defines the domain that will be used by future VTP servers and clients.
- Multiple VTP servers can coexist in a domain, and is recommended for redundancy.
- There is no election for primary or secondary server
- If one server is configured with a new VLAN or VTP parameter, other servers synchronize just as any client

Client mode:

- listen to VTP advertisements from other switches and modify configurations accordingly.
- forward/relay VTP messages out trunk links to neighboring switches in the domain

Transparent mode:

- do not participate in VTP, does not advertise or synchronize its VLAN database with received advertisements.
- can create and delete VLANs that are local only to itself without changes being advertised
- Works only as a relaying member.
- [VTP v1, transparent mode does not relay VTP info unless its domain and VTP version numbers match]
- [VTP v2 and 3, transparent mode does forward VTP advertisements regardless of the VTP domain name]

Off mode simply disables all VTP activity on the switch.

Revision Numbers - watch out when adding hardware!

VTP uses a revision number to track the most recent information.

Starts at 0 and is incremented by the VTP server with each change in domain info it will advertise
An advertisement with a greater revision number than before says it has new and updated information.

That advertisement is stored and overwrites any previously stored VLAN information.

Important!

VTP VLAN data is saved in `vlan.dat` file in flash memory is retained even when the switch power is off.
It ensures a switch can recover last known VTP/VLAN configuration from its VTP database after it reboots. Even a device previously configured in client mode will send a summary advertisement using info from its `vlan.dat` after powering up and discovering it has a higher revision number.

- *Care must be taken to not plug in a VTP enabled switch containing a higher revision number, as it will obliterate existing VTP database information throughout the domain it matches to!*

- Always force revision number 0 before being attaching *EVEN if previously configured as a only a VTP client*
- On a new device, set to VTP transparent and then later change back to server- or change the VTP domain to a bogus name
- For critical portions of your network, consider using VTP transparent or off mode to prevent synchronization problems
- Eliminate the chance for duplicate, overlapping VLANs in a large network with transparent mode. For example, two administrators might configure VLANs on switches in their respective areas but use the same VLAN identification or VLAN number. They could overlap if both administrators advertised them using VTP servers

Domains use unsecure advertisements (default), but a password can be required to participants (secure mode)

Cisco Catalyst switches - default is VTP mode server - Don't forget to disable!

It turns out that by default Cisco switches operate in VTP server mode for the management domain NULL (a blank string), no password. If it hears a VTP summary advertisement it automatically learns the VTP domain name, VLANs, revision number. This makes it easy to bring up a new switch in an existing VTP domain.

Be sure to remember that the new switch stays in VTP server mode until you change it..

```

show vtp status
Switch# show vtp status
VTP Version capable      : 1 to 3
VTP version running      : 1
VTP Domain Name          :
VTP Pruning Mode         : Disabled
VTP Traps Generation     : Disabled
Device ID                 : aca0.164f.3f80
Configuration last modified by 0.0.0.0 at 0-0-00 00:00:00
Local updater ID is 0.0.0.0 (no valid interface found)
Feature VLAN:
-----
VTP Operating Mode        : Server
Maximum VLANs supported locally : 1005
Number of existing VLANs    : 5
Configuration Revision     : 0
MD5 digest                : 0x57 0xCD 0x40 0x65 0x63 0x59 0x47 0xBD
                           0x56 0x9D 0x4A 0x3E 0xA5 0x69 0x35 0xBC

```

Advertisement types

Summary advertisements

- VTP domain servers send every 300 seconds and every time a VLAN database change occurs
- VTP version, domain name, revision number, MD5 hash, and number of subset advertisements to follow.
- When config changes, one or more subset advertisements with more details are sent afterwards

Subset advertisements

- list specific changes: add/ delete/ suspend/ activate a VLAN, changing of VLAN name, number, MTU.
- Even change in VLAN type (such as Ethernet or Token Ring), or security association identifier (SAID- 802.10)
- each VLAN gets its own individual sequential subset advertisement per change, as needed.

VTP advertisements are multicast 01-00-0C-CC-CCCC and an SNAP type value of 0x2003.

Cisco switches default to v1. Versions are not fully backward compatible with each other

Versions 1 and 2 support VLAN numbers 1 to 1005. Only VTP v3 supports extended VLAN range 1-4094.

VTP v3 Features

Extended VLAN range VLANs 1 through 4094 can be advertised throughout a VTPv3 domain

Enhanced authentication - the password can be hidden (only a hash of the password is saved in the running configuration) or secret (the password is saved in the running configuration).

Database propagation - databases other than VTP can be advertised

By default, all VTPv3 switches operate as secondary servers and can send updates throughout the domain.

A primary server is only needed to take control of a domain.

Per-port VTP - VTPv3 can be enabled on a per-trunk port basis, rather than a switch as a whole

```

Switch(config)# vtp version 3
Switch(config)# vtp domain MyCompany
Switch(config)# vtp mode server
Switch(config)# vtp password bigsecret

```

VLAN Pruning

VTP pruning makes more efficient use of trunk bandwidth by reducing unnecessary flooded traffic.

Broadcast, multicast, and unknown unicast frames on a VLAN are forwarded over a trunk link only if the switch on the receiving end of the trunk has ports in that VLAN.

When a switch has an active port associated with a VLAN, the switch advertises that to its neighbor switches.

The neighbors then decide whether flooded traffic from a VLAN should be allowed on certain trunk links.

Even when VTP pruning has determined that a VLAN is not needed on a trunk, an instance of the Spanning Tree will run for every VLAN that is **allowed** on the trunk link. To reduce the number of STP instances, you should manually "prune" unneeded VLANs from the trunk and allow only the needed ones. Use the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command to identify the VLANs that should be added or removed from a trunk.

VTP pruning is disabled by default. To enable pruning, use **vtp pruning**

On a VTP server, it says pruning needs to be enabled for the entire domain (all will also enable pruning).

When pruning is enabled, all general-purpose VLANs become eligible for pruning on all trunk links, if needed. However, you can modify the default list of pruning eligibility with the following interface-configuration command:

switchport trunk pruning vlan {{add | except | remove} vlan-list} | none}

vlan-list	List of eligible VLAN numbers (2-1001), separate by commas or dashes, no spaces.
add	Will add to the already configured list
except	All VLANs are eligible except for the VLAN numbers
remove	VLAN numbers to remove from the already configured list
none	No VLAN will be eligible for pruning.

Obviously, VTP pruning has no effect on switches in the VTP transparent mode.

Those switches must be configured manually to “prune” VLANs from trunk links (same command)

VLAN 1 is never eligible for pruning, same with 1002-1005 (reserved for Token Ring and FDDI VLANs)

Troubleshooting VTP - Not updating information from a VTP server?

- Is the switch in VTP transparent mode
- If a VTP client, there might not be an VTP server. In this case, just make it a VTP server itself.
- Is the link to the VTP server a trunk? VTP advertisements are sent only over trunks.
- Is the VTP domain name is configured to match the one on the VTP server.
- Check if the VTP version is compatible matches the VTP domain.
- Does the VTP domain use a password? If the server doesn't, make sure the password is disabled or cleared.

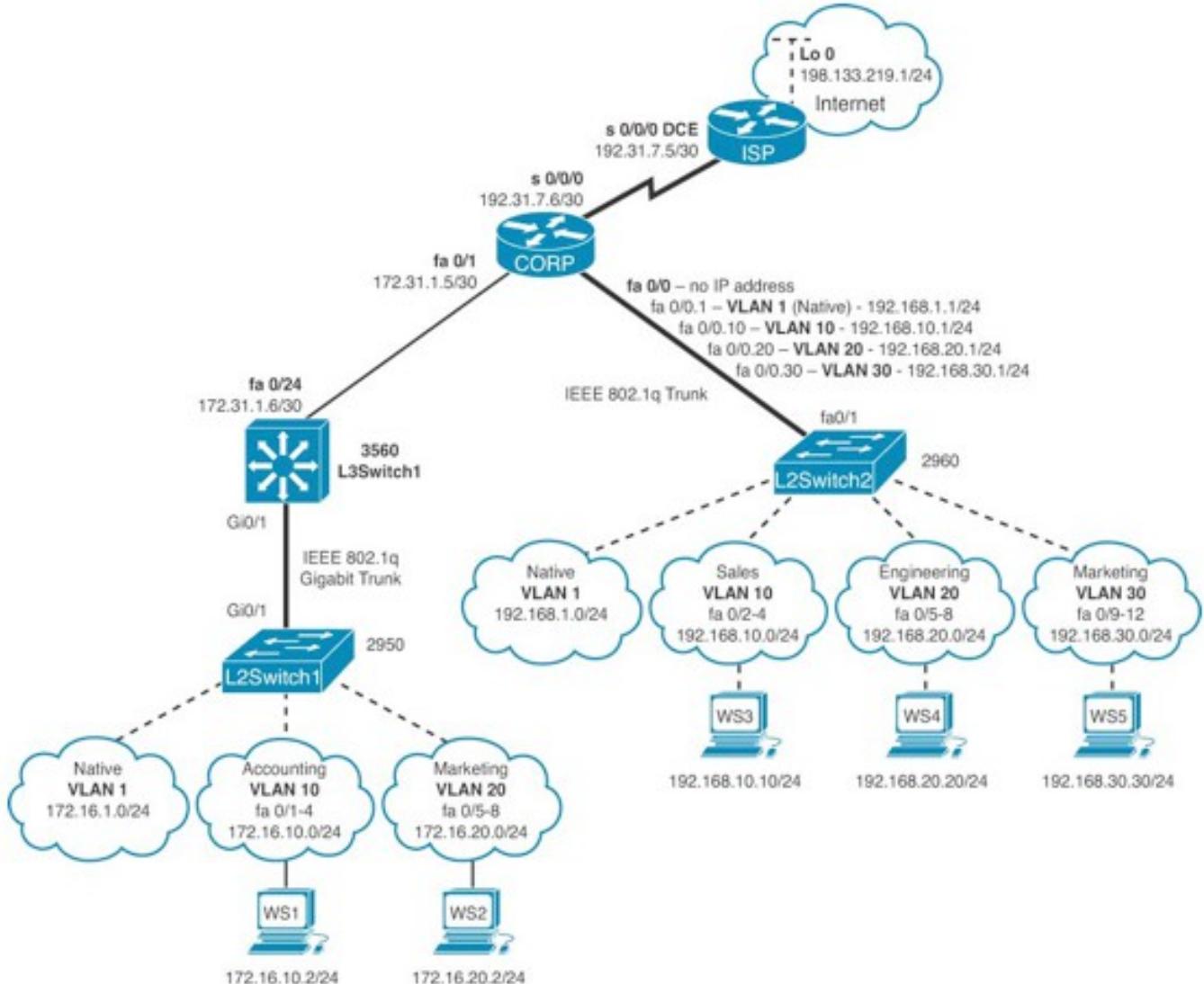
VTP Troubleshooting Commands

show vtp status	Current VTP parameters, incl. the last VTP server
show vlan brief	Displays defined VLANs
show interface type member/module/number switchport	Displays trunk status, including pruning eligibility
show interface type member/module/number pruning	Displays VTP pruning state

VTP Configuration Commands

vtp domain domain-name	Define the VTP domain.
vtp mode {server client transparent off}	Set the VTP mode.
vtp password password [hidden secret]	Define an optional VTP password.
vtp version {1 2 3}	Configure VTP version.
vtp pruning	Enable VTP pruning.
switchport trunk pruning vlan {add except none remove} vlan-list	Specify VLANs eligible for pruning

Configuration Example- Inter-VLAN Communication - pp113, Empson



ISP Router

```

Router>enable.
Router>#configure terminal
Router(config)#hostname ISP

```

```

ISP(config)#interface loopback 0
ISP(config-if)#description simulated address for remote website
ISP(config-if)#ip address 198.133.219.1 255.255.255.255.0
ISP(config-if)#interface serial 0/0/0
ISP(config-if)#description WAN link to the Corporate Router
ISP(config-if)#ip address 192.31.7.5 255.255.255.252
ISP(config-if)#clock rate 56000 --DCE cable so don't forget the clock rate
ISP(config-if)#no shutdown

```

```

ISP(config-if)#router eigrp 10 --- initialize EIGRP for AS
ISP(config-router)#network 198.133.219.0
ISP(config-router)#network 192.31.7.0
ISP(config-router)#no auto-summary
ISP#copy running-config startup-config

```

CORP Router

```

Router>enable.
Router>#configure terminal
Router(config)#hostname CORP

```

```

CORP(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
CORP(config-if)#description link to ISP Router
CORP(config-if)#ip address 192.31.7.6 255.255.255.252
CORP(config-if)#no shutdown
CORP(config)#interface fastethernet 0/1
CORP(config-if)#description link to 3560 Switch
CORP(config-if)#ip address 172.31.1.5 255.255.255.252
CORP(config-if)#no shutdown
CORP(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
CORP(config-if)#description link to L2Switch2
CORP(config-if)#duplex full ---full-duplex to ensure trunking will take effect with L2Switch2.
CORP(config-if)#no shutdown
CORP(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/0.1 ---Creates a virtual subinterface
CORP(config-subif)#description Management VLAN 1 – Native VLAN
CORP(config-subif)#encapsulation dot1q 1 native
CORP(config-subif)#ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
CORP(config-subif)#interface fastethernet 0/0.10
CORP(config-subif)#description Sales VLAN 10
CORP(config-subif)#encapsulation dot1q 10
CORP(config-subif)#ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
CORP(config-subif)#interface fastethernet 0/0.20
CORP(config-subif)#description Engineering VLAN 20
CORP(config-subif)#encapsulation dot1q 20
CORP(config-subif)#ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
CORP(config-subif)#interface fastethernet 0/0.30
CORP(config-subif)#description Marketing VLAN 30
CORP(config-subif)#encapsulation dot1q 30
CORP(config-subif)#ip add 192.168.30.1 255.255.255.0
CORP(config-subif)#exit
CORP(config-if)#exit
CORP(config)#router eigrp 10
CORP(config-router)#network 192.168.1.0 ---Advertise our networks
CORP(config-router)#network 192.168.10.0
CORP(config-router)#network 192.168.20.0
CORP(config-router)#network 192.168.30.0
CORP(config-router)#network 172.31.0.0
CORP(config-router)#network 192.31.7.0
CORP(config-router)#no auto-summary

```

L2Switch2 (Catalyst 2960)

```

Switch(config)#hostname L2Switch2
L2Switch2(config)#vlan 10
L2Switch2(config-vlan)#name Sales ---Assign names to the VLANs
L2Switch2(config)#vlan 20
L2Switch2(config-vlan)#name Engineering
L2Switch2(config-vlan)#vlan 30
L2Switch2(config-vlan)#name Marketing
L2Switch2(config)#interface range fastethernet 0/2 - 4 ---Assign access ports to the VLANs
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 10
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#interface range fastethernet 0/5 - 8
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 20
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#interface range fastethernet 0/9 - 12
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 30
L2Switch2(config-if-range)#exit
L2Switch2(config)#interface fastethernet 0/1
L2Switch2(config-if)#description Trunk Link to CORP Router
L2Switch2(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
L2Switch2(config-if)#exit
L2Switch2(config)#interface vlan 1 ---Creates virtual interface for VLAN 1
L2Switch2(config-if)#ip address 192.168.1.2 255.255.255.0
L2Switch2(config-if)#no shutdown
L2Switch2(config-if)#exit
L2Switch2(config)#ip default-gateway 192.168.1.1 ---Assigns the default gateway address.
L2Switch2(config)#exit
L2Switch2#copy running-config startup-config

```

L3Switch1 (Catalyst 3560)

```
Switch(config)#hostname L3Switch1
L3Switch1(config)#vtp mode server ---Changes the switch to VTP server mode.
L3Switch1(config)#vtp domain testdomain ---Configures the VTP domain name to testdomain.
L3Switch1(config)#vlan 10
L3Switch1(config-vlan)#name Accounting
L3Switch1(config-vlan)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#vlan 20
L3Switch1(config-vlan)#name Marketing
L3Switch1(config-vlan)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#interface gigabitethernet 0/1
L3Switch1(config-if)#description Gigabit Trunk to L2Switch1
L3Switch1(config-if)#switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
L3Switch1(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
L3Switch1(config-if)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#ip routing ---Enables IP routing on this device.
L3Switch1(config)#interface vlan 1 ---Creates a virtual interface for VLAN 1
L3Switch1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.1.1 255.255.255.0
L3Switch1(config-if)#no shutdown
L3Switch1(config-if)#interface vlan 10
L3Switch1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.10.1 255.255.255.0
L3Switch1(config-if)#no shutdown
L3Switch1(config-if)#interface vlan 20
L3Switch1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.20.1 255.255.255.0
L3Switch1(config-if)#no shutdown
L3Switch1(config-if)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#interface fastethernet 0/24
L3Switch1(config-if)#description Link to CORP
L3Switch1(config-if)#no switchport ---Creates a Layer 3 port on the switch.
L3Switch1(config-if)#ip address 172.31.1.6 255.255.255.252
L3Switch1(config-if)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#router eigrp 10
L3Switch1(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
L3Switch1(config-router)#network 172.31.0.0
L3Switch1(config-router)#no auto-summary
L3Switch1(config-router)#exit
L3Switch1(config)#exit
L3Switch1#copy running-config startup-config
```

L2Switch1 (Catalyst 2960)

```
Switch(config)#hostname L2Switch1
L2Switch1(config)#vtp domain testdomain ---VTP domain name to testdomain.
L2Switch1(config)#vtp mode client ---Changes the switch to VTP client mode.
L2Switch1(config)#interface range fastethernet 0/1 - 4
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 10
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#interface range fastethernet 0/5 - 8
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#switchport mode access
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#switchport access vlan 20
L2Switch1(config-if-range)#exit
L2Switch1(config)#interface gigabitethernet 0/1
L2Switch1(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
L2Switch1(config-if)#exit
L2Switch1(config)#interface vlan 1
L2Switch1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.1.2 255.255.255.0 --VLAN1 on diagram is 172.16.1.0/24 - typo?
L2Switch1(config-if)#no shutdown
L2Switch1(config-if)#exit
L2Switch1(config)#ip default-gateway 172.16.1.1
L2Switch1(config)#exit .
L2Switch1#copy running-config startup-config
```

Spanning Tree (802.1D)

Spanning Tree is a managed system where each port is in a forwarding or blocking state. Blocking state means the port doesn't process any frames except STP messages - the switch physically receives the frame on blocked port, but ignores it. If topology changes (a switch goes down), STP convergence updates port states accordingly. This system has a "root bridge" and uses bridge IDs for each switch containing a priority # and MAC address. Distance to the root switch/bridge are measured as a "root cost" from each switch and port, and governs the forwarding and blocking of ports, and ultimately, the paths Layer 2 stuff can take around the network.

The Root Bridge/ Root Switch and the System's Basics

- The root switch is always the designated switch on all directly connected segments
- All ports on the root switch are designated ports, in a forwarding state
- Nonroot switches have a root port (with lowest cost to the root switch); if directly connected, it's the root port.
- Each nonroot switch has at least one designated port (DP) to the other non-root switches.
- Similarly, a designated switch is chosen by lowest "root cost" among other paths to root, other non-root switches connect to the root through their neighboring designated switch.
- Throughout this system of non-root switches, up/up ints become either DPs or blocked
- The designated port's job is to forward STP messages (BPDUs) back and forth from the root

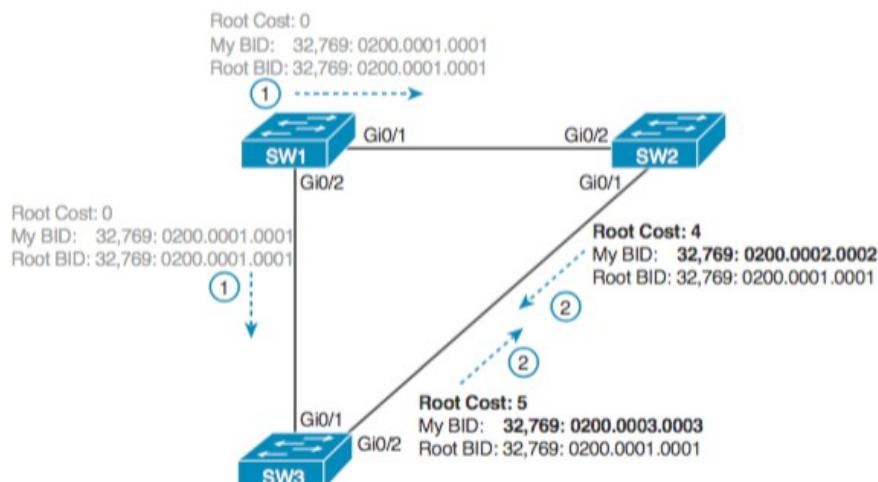
Electing the Root Switch [more explanation in Bridge ID (BID) section]

Root switch has the lowest value priority field in their BID

If SW1 Priority = 4096 and SW2 Priority = 8192, then SW1 is Root

If a priority tie occurs, switch with lowest MAC address field in BID is Root

If SW1 Pri= 4096 & MAC= 0200.xxxx.xxxx and SW2 Pri= 4096 & MAC= 0911.xxxx.xxxx, SW1 is Root



Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDU) exchange info among switches

Hello messages are a BPDU containing:

- Root Bridge ID, Sender's Bridge ID and root cost
- Timer values on the root switch [hello, MaxAge, and forward delay timers]

Configuration BPDUs originate from Root Bridge. These are the majority of BPDUs on a healthy network

Topology Change Notification (TCN) BPDUs sent to the Root Bridge to alert that active topology has changed. (notification and acknowledgement subtypes)

Timers

Hello - 2 seconds default - Time period between receiving hellos created by the root

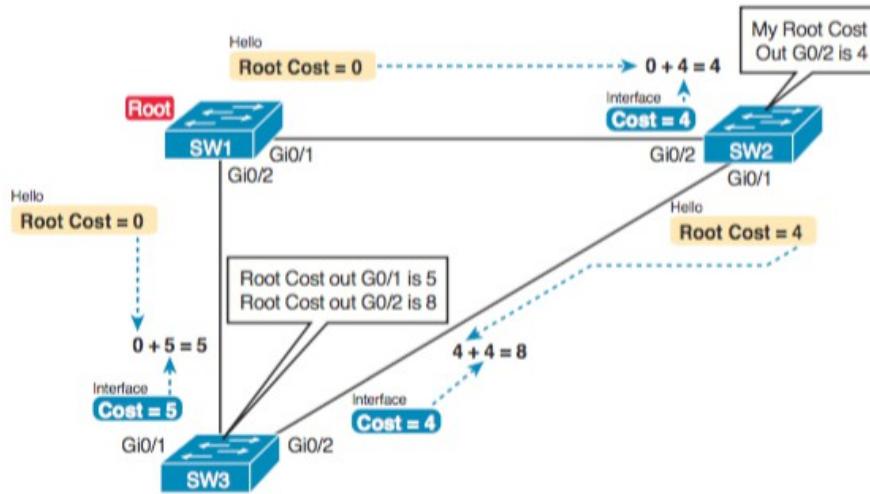
MaxAge- 10x hello timer (20 sec default) - How long switch waits after no hello BPDUs, before changing states

Forward delay- 15 secs - time interface goes from blocking to forwarding in each of the listening, learning states

Electing Designated Ports - the port with the lowest-cost hello on a LAN segment.

(Hello msgs have a cost of 0 when they leave the root switch) Cost by line type, 2nd # is "long path cost":

10 Mbps	100	2000000
100 Mbps	19	200000
1 Gbps	4	20000
10 Gbps	2	2000
100 Gbps		200



Both SW2 and SW3 list their respective cost to the root switch (cost 4 on SW2 and cost 5 on SW3). SW2 lists the lower cost, so SW2's Gi0/1 port is the designated port on that LAN segment. **The order is lowest root cost, then lowest BID, then lowest neighbor port priority, then finally, lowest neighbor internal port number**

50-second convergence delay: STP has the interface in both *learning* and *listening* states for a time equal to the forward delay timer, which defaults to 15 seconds each. A convergence event that causes an interface to change from blocking to forwarding requires 30 sec to transition those PLUS the MaxAge to first move from blocking

Temporary states when going from blocking to forwarding:

- Listening- doesn't forward- does MAC table cleanup
- Learning- also doesn't forward- learn the MAC address of received frames

State	Forwards?	Learns MACs?	Transitory or Stable State?
Blocking	No	No	Stable
Listening	No	No	Transitory
Learning	No	Yes	Transitory
Forwarding	Yes	Yes	Stable
Disabled	No	No	Stable

Rapid STP (IEEE 802.1w - RSTP): (is backward-compatible w/ non-RSTP switches)

- Calls blocking "discarding", no listening state. Only has learning, forwarding or discarding states
- Hello time = 2 secs, Max Age = 6 secs (3 x hello, 3 missed BPDUs)
- **improves convergence from about 50 seconds to about 10 seconds**
- adds two port types allowed to immediately enter the forwarding state rather than passively wait for the network to converge. In addition to forwarding, root, designated, and disabled:
 - Alternate port - best alternate path to the root bridge if there is a failure on the designated port
 - Backup port. Applies to scenarios with a hub. Antiquated.

Check Before Connecting New HW

When plugged into the network, switches send out hello BPDUs listing their own BID as the root BID, then, if it hears a hello that lists a better (lower) BID, that switch stops advertising itself as root and starts forwarding the superior hello. This is how an unauthorized or improperly vetted device can screw up a STP topology- if one shows up with a lower BID, convergence spreads it as a new root switch and everything goes haywire.

PortFast

- Allows immediately change from blocking to forwarding. No listening or learning states
- For endpoint/edge devices (PCs) - NOT bridges/switches
- *Don't put on interfaces receiving BPDU (not another switch)* - w/o BDPU Guard can create loops
- If voice VLAN set, PortFast turns on automatically- will stay on even if voice VLAN is unset

BPDU Guard

- BDPU Guard disables a port if any BPDUs are received on it and prevents PortFast problems
- STP opens up the following security exposures:

Attacker adds switch with low STP priority and becomes the Root Switch

Attacker could plug into multiple ports/switches, become root, & forward (or TCPDump) LAN traffic

Users can harm the LAN when they connect a non-STP switch (can be counted in elections, etc.)

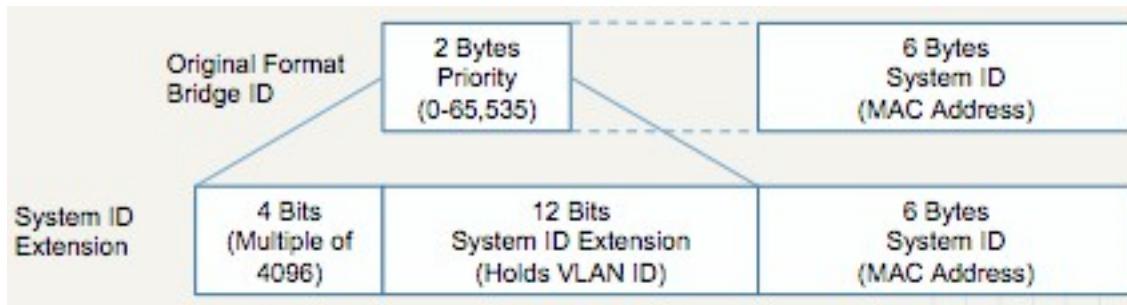
The Bridge ID - { [Priority(4096-61440) + VLAN ID(1-4094)] + the MAC address}

STP Bridge ID (BID) is a unique 8-byte value- basically a priority field slapped onto a MAC address

- a 2-byte priority field The last 12 bits holds a VLAN ID 0-4096 (it's just basically a 16-bit number)
- a 6-byte system ID - the 48-bit MAC address

The 2-byte Priority field is separated into 2 parts

- 4-bit priority field; the part that can be changed with the "priority" directive
- 12-bit *system ID extension* - basically, just space for the VLAN ID)



When the bits are written out, those leading 4 bits reside starting at the 4096 bit (the 13th bit), so each number starting there would naturally be a multiple of 4096. Since VLAN IDs can range from 1 to 4094, it all makes perfect sense and looks a lot less complicated like this:

[Priority 4096-61440 + VLAN 1-4094] + tack on the MAC address.

Means, [0000 + 000000000000] + your MAC address

0000 - [111111111111] <---- 4095 in binary (enough bits reserved to plop a "priority" onto)

We configure the priority field below in square brackets:

[1000] - 000000000000 <---- Default base priority of 32768 in binary

[0110] - 000000000000 <---- Secondary root bridge designation number in binary

[????] - 000000000000 <----you can set a multiple here for a priority (from 4096 x ? up to 61440)

The Easy Way

- **spanning-tree vlan vlan-id root primary** [auto-set this vlan's priority low enough to become root now]

Cisco switches use a default base priority of 32,768

If current root base priority > 24,576, make base priority 24,576.

If 24,576 or lower, sets base priority to highest multiple of 4096 that results in becoming root.

For our numbers below, 28,672 is 0110 000000000000

- **spanning-tree vlan vlan-id root secondary** [again, this auto-sets it for us]

A priority value worse than the primary switch but better than all the other switches.

Sets the switch's base priority to 28,672 *regardless* of the current root's priority value.

For our numbers below, 28,672 is 0111 000000000000

The Hard Way

It is much easier to just designate using root primary and secondary to avoid doing it yourself. If you insist on doing "spanning-tree vlan vlan-id priority x":

- **spanning-tree vlan vlan-id priority x**

A switch configured with VLANs 1 through 4, with a default base priority

of 32,768, has a default STP priority of 32,769 in VLAN 1, 32,770 in VLAN 2, 32,771 in VLAN 3, and so on. So, you can view the 16-bit priority as a base priority (as configured on the **spanning-tree vlan vlan-id priority x** command) plus the VLAN ID."

0001:000000000001 = 4097

0010:000000000001 = 8193

0100 = 16384, 1000 = 32768

Vlan 1 would be 32769, Vlan 2 32770, Vlan 10 32778, Vlan 100 32868

1111= 61,440 <--- if there are more than one bit turned on, things get weird. One trick is to pretend the VLAN-ID part is all 1's so it flattens out to multiples of 4096 only, when trying to calculate stuff)

Final word: If binary makes you uncomfortable, forget it. Use "root primary" and "root secondary"

Determining the Root Switch and the Root Port on Nonroot Switches

Use **show spanning-tree**, **show spanning-tree root** to rule out any switches that have an RP, because root switches do not have an RP. **show spanning-tree** identifies the local switch as root directly: "This switch is the root". In **show spanning-tree root**, the RP column is empty if the local switch is the root.

Using **show spanning-tree vlan x** on a few switches, and recording the root switch, RP, and DP ports can quickly show you most STP facts. Chase the RPs. If starting with SW1, and SW1's G0/1 is an RP, try the switch on the other end of SW1's G0/1 port.

STP Tiebreakers When Choosing the Root Port

The three tiebreakers are, in the order: lowest neighbor bridge ID, lowest neighbor port priority, finally, lowest neighbor internal port number. Only root paths that tie are considered when thinking about tiebreakers.

Below, SW3 is not root and that its two paths to reach the root tie with their root costs of 8. The first tiebreaker is the lowest neighbor's BID. SW1's BID value is lower than SW2's, so SW3 chooses its G0/1 interface as its RP.

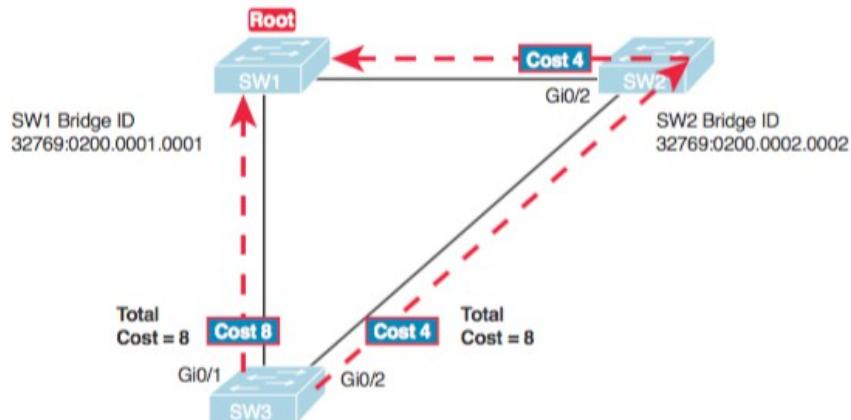


Figure 2-8 SW3's Root Cost Calculation Ends in a Tie

The last two RP tiebreakers come into play only when two switches connect to each other with multiple links, as shown in above. In that case, a switch receives hellos on more than one port from the same neighboring switch, so the BIDs tie.

So, SW2 becomes root, and SW1 needs to choose its RP. SW1's root cost over each path will tie at 19. SW2 sends hellos over each link to SW1, so SW1 cannot break the tie based on SW1's neighbor BID because both list SW2's BID. So, SW1 has to turn to the other two tiebreakers.



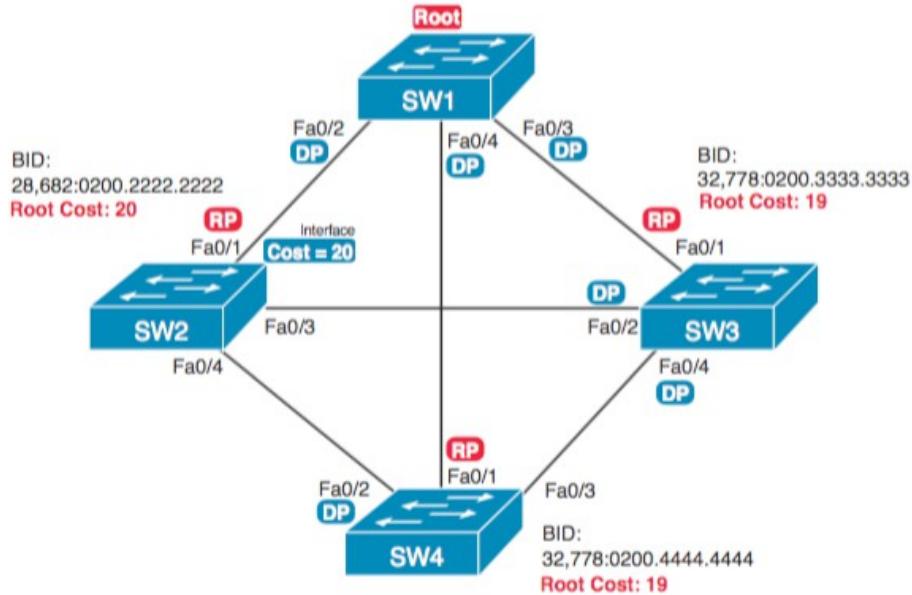
Figure 2-9 Topology Required for the Last Two Tiebreakers for Root Port

The next tiebreaker is configurable: the neighboring switch's port priority on each neighboring switch interface. Cisco switch ports default to a setting of 128, with a range of values from 0 through 255, with lower being better (as usual). Here, SW2's F0/16 was manually set with **spanning-tree vlan 10 port-priority 112**. SW1 learns that the neighbor has a port priority of 112 on the top link and 128 on the bottom, so SW1 uses its top (F0/14) interface as the root port.

If the port priority ties, which it often does due to the default values, STP relies on an internal port numbering on the neighbor. Cisco switches assign an internal integer to identify each interface on the switch. The nonroot looks for the neighbor's lowest internal port number (as listed in the hello messages) and chooses its RP based on the lower number.

With Fa0/1 having the lowest number, then Fa0/2, then Fa0/3, and so on- SW2's Fa0/16 would have a lower internal port number than Fa0/17; SW1 would learn those numbers in the hello; and SW1 would use its Fa0/14 port as its RP. (In real life, most engineers would put these two links into an EtherChannel)

This figure notes the root, RPs, and DPs and each switch's least cost to reach the root over its respective RP.



Remember the order of the criteria:

Lowest root cost, lowest BID, lowest neighbor port priority, lowest neighbor internal port number

Focus on the segments that connect the nonroot switches for a moment.

SW2–SW4 segment: SW4 wins because of its root cost of 19, compared to SW2's root cost of 20.

SW2–SW3 segment: SW3 wins because of its root cost of 19, compared to SW2's root cost of 20.

SW3–SW4 segment: SW3 and SW4 tie on root cost, both with 19. SW3 wins due to its better (lower) BID value.

SW2 loses and does not become DP on the links to SW3 and SW4 even though SW2 has the better (lower) BID value. The first DP criteria is the lowest root cost, and SW2's root cost happens to be higher than SW3's and SW4's.

show spanning-tree vlan Bridge and RootID info, timers; port roles for local ports, switch role for device.

show spanning-tree vlan 10 root - lists root's BID for each VLAN, local switch's root cost and root port

show spanning-tree vlan 10 bridge - lists the local switch's BID, MAC, timers

debug spanning-tree events

spanning-tree portfast - **spanning-tree bpduguard enable** (to be run on individual interfaces)

Default is no portfast and no BPDU Guard. Change the opposite to make all on the new default:

spanning-tree portfast default - **spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default** (Global config)

spanning-tree portfast disable - **spanning-tree bpduguard disable** (Run per interface config)

UplinkFast: pg 197 - UplinkFast: Access Layer Uplinks

BackboneFast pg 198 - BackboneFast: Redundant Backbone Paths

Commands for Spanning Tree - PortFast - BDPUGuard - UplinkFast - BackboneFast

spanning-tree vlan-id	Enable STP.
spanning-tree mode { pvst rapid-pvst mst }	Set the STP mode.
spanning-tree vlan vlan-number root primary	Changes this switch to the root.
spanning-tree vlan vlan-number root secondary	Sets this switch's STP base
spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] {priority priority}	Changes the bridge priority of this switch for this VLAN.
spanning-tree [vlan vlan-number] cost cost	Changes the STP cost .
spanning-tree [vlan vlan-number] port-priority priority	Changes STP port priority in VLAN (0 to 240, count by 16).
spanning-tree vlan vlan-id priority bridge-priority	Set bridge priority.
spanning-tree vlan vlan-id root {primary secondary} [diameter diameter]	Set root bridge (macro).
spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] hello-time seconds spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] forward-time seconds spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] max-age seconds	Set STP timers.
show spanning-tree	STP info all VLANs, ports summarized
show spanning-tree detail	STP info all VLANs, ports detailed.
show spanning-tree interface interface-id	Lists STP info for the specified port
show spanning-tree vlan vlan-id	Lists STP info for the specified VLAN
show spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] summary	Show switch ports currently in each of the STP states.
show spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] root	Show a VLAN's root bridge ID, root port, and root path cost.
show spanning-tree [vlan vlan-id] bridge	Show this switch's bridge ID and STP timers
show spanning-tree interface type number portfast	1-line status message about PortFast
channel-group channel-group-number mode {auto desirable active passive on}	Enables EtherChannel.
show etherchannel [chan-grp-#] {brief detail port port-channel summary}	Info on state of EtherChannels
debug spanning-tree events	Provide info messages about changes in the STP topology
spanning-tree portfast (disable)	Enables/disables PortFast.
spanning-tree bpduguard enable disable	Enables/disables BPDU Guard
spanning-tree portfast default	Changes switch default for PortFast to enabled.
spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default	Changes switch default for BPDU Guard to enabled.
spanning-tree uplinkfast [max-update-rate pkts-per-sec]	Set UplinkFast on a switch.
spanning-tree backbonefast	Set BackboneFast on a switch.
show spanning-tree uplinkfast	Show the STP UplinkFast status.
show spanning-tree backbonefast	Show the STP BackboneFast status.
show spanning-tree summary	Display global BPDU Guard, BPDU filter, and Loop Guard states.
show spanning-tree interface type mod/num [detail]	Look for detailed reasons for inconsistencies.
show spanning-tree inconsistentports	List ports labeled in an inconsistent state.
show udld [type mod/num]	Display the UDLD status on one or all ports.
udld reset	Reenable ports that UDLD aggressive mode errdisabled.

Task	Global Command Syntax	Interface Command Syntax
Enable Root Guard.	--	spanning-tree guard root
Enable BPDU Guard.	spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default	spanning-tree bpduguard enable
Enable Loop Guard.	spanning-tree loopguard default	spanning-tree guard loop
Enable UDLD.	udld {enable aggressive message time}	udld {enable aggressive disable}
Enable BPDU filtering.	spanning-tree bpdufilter default	spanning-tree bpdufilter enable

Switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree portfast**

Define an edge port

Switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree link-type point-to-point**

Override a port type

Switch(config)# **spanning-tree mode mst**

Enable MST on a switch

Switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**

Enter MST configuration mode

Switch(config-mst)# **name name**

Name the MST region.

Switch(config-mst)# **revision version**

Set the configuration revision number

spanning-tree mst instance-id root {primary | secondary} [diameter diameter] Set root bridge (macro).

spanning-tree mst instance-id priority bridge- priority

Set bridge priority.

spanning-tree mst instance-id cost cost

Set port cost.

spanning-tree mst instance-id port-priority port-priority

Set port priority.

Set STP timers.

spanning-tree mst hello-time seconds

spanning-tree mst forward-time seconds

spanning-tree mst max-age seconds

STP and RSTP Port Path Cost values

Data rate	STP 802.1D-1998	RSTP 802.1W-2004
Base Metric	1 Gigabit per sec	2 Terabit per sec
Calculation	$1,000,000/(N \text{ Kb/s})$ (1998 is nonlinear)	$20,000,000,000/(N \text{ Kb/s})$ (1990 was linear)
$\leq 100 \text{ Kb/s}$		200,000,000
1 Mbit/s		20,000,000
4 Mbit/s	250	5,000,000
10 Mbit/s	100	2,000,000
16 Mbit/s	62 (was 63)	1,250,000
45 Mbit/s	39 (was 22)	444,445
100 Mbit/s	19 (was 10)	200,000
155 Mbit/s	14 (was 6)	129,032
622 Mbit/s	6 (was 2)	32,154
1 Gbit/s	4 (was 1)	20,000
2 Gbit/s	3	10,000
10 Gbit/s	2	2,000
100 Gbit/s		200
1 Tbit/s		20
10 Tbit/s		2

802.1W-2004: Limiting the range of the Path Cost parameter to 1–200 000 000 ensures that the accumulated Path Cost cannot exceed 32 bits over a concatenation of 20 hops

The grey cells indicate values presented by Cisco in the Switch 300-115 Official Cert Guide and are not in the IEEE 802.1W-2004.

Cisco also says in the CIEE 5.0 Routing and Switching book the short format is Cisco's, and not IEEE.

Indeed, in IEEE 802.1W-2004, it is the long format which remains (ed.: I am thankful since a nonlinear format is nonsensical)

Switching: EtherChannel

Cisco's Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP) and Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP - 802.3ad)

- Combines multiple parallel segments of equal speed into an EtherChannel (single interface)
- Multiple segments of equal speed up to 8 links. If one fails, the rest stay up.
- Prevents STP convergence when only a single failure occurs; with at least one up, no STP convergence
- Aggregated links provide some load balancing on switches (and better use of bandwidth)

Create the port-channel interface, exit, then enter interface config mode for ports and add them with a mode:

```
Cat2950(config)# interface port-channel 1 <exit>
Cat2950(config)# interface fa0/2
Cat2950(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode on
```

PAgP: **channel-group 1 mode {desirable | auto}**

LACP: **channel-group 1 mode {active | passive}**

Manually run with **channel-group 1 mode on** (has no encapsulation; set "on" on both ends)

- One side must be either desirable or active to get the other end to begin negotiations (like trunks)
- Number must remain the same on the current device. Another device could call it 4 or 5

Three terms as synonyms: EtherChannel, PortChannel, and Channel-group.

The **channel-group** configuration command

show etherchannel shows status of a "PortChannel" (instead of EtherChannel or Channel-group)

show spanning-tree also says Port-channel

Misconfiguration of channel-group commands:

- All members of a switch's specific etherchannel need to be using the same channel-group number.
- The neighboring switches can refer to that etherchannel as any number they want.
- If using the "on" keyword, it has to be on the other end too (and remember no encaps'ing).
- If using the "desirable" keyword, it's PAgP and the other must use either "desirable" or "auto".
- If using "active" keyword, it's LACP; the other must use either "active" or "passive".
- No "auto" or "passive" keyword on both switches! Then both wait on the other to begin negotiations.
- Don't mix LACP and PAgP commands on one end or the other- the protocols need to match.

show etherchannel [chan-grp-#] {brief | detail | port | port-channel | summary}

```
SW1# show etherchannel 1 summary
Flags: D - down          P - bundled in port-channel
      I - stand-alone  S - suspended
      H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
      R - Layer3         S - Layer2
      U - in use          f - failed to allocate aggregator
      M - not in use, minimum links not met
      u - unsuitable for bundling
      w - waiting to be aggregated
      d - default port

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators:           1
Group  Port-channel  Protocol    Ports
1      Po1(SU)       -          Fa0/14 (P)   Fa0/15 (P)
```

The **show etherchannel summary** command. The D code letter means that the channel itself is down, with S meaning a Layer 2 EtherChannel. The bottom shows Portchannel (Po1) as L2 EtherChannel in a down state (SD)
"Down" only refers to the EtherChannel state - the two physical interfaces are still connected (**sh int status**)

Configuration Checks for EtherChannel

Things need to match or be compatible. Watch for common sense stuff (no shutdown, speed, duplex)

- Operational access or trunking state (all must be access, or all must be trunks)
- On an access port, check the access VLAN;
- Trunk port? Check allowed VLAN list - **switchport trunk allowed** - also check the native VLAN
- Check STP interface settings (ie, cost)

For example, if you change the STP port cost on one of the interfaces but not the other you get this:

ERR_Disable: channel-misconfig (STP) error detected on Po1, putting Fa0/14 in err-disable state
ERR_Disable: channel-misconfig (STP) error detected on Po1, putting Fa0/15 in err-disable state
ERR_Disable: channel-misconfig (STP) error detected on Po1, putting Po1 in err-disable state

Make them match and it should bring everything back up again

EtherChannel Stuff from CCNP

Load balancing uses a hashing operation on either MAC or IP addresses and can be based solely on source or destination addresses, or both. To configure frame distribution for all EtherChannel switch links:

Switch(config)# **port-channel load-balance method**

The method is set with a global configuration command. It's set globally for the switch, not on a per-port basis.

Table 10-3 Types of EtherChannel Load-Balancing Methods

Method Value	Hash Input
src-ip	Source IP
dst-ip	Destination IP
src-dst-ip	Source and destination IP
src-mac	Source MAC
dst-mac	Destination MAC
src-dst-mac	Source and destination MAC
src-port	Source port number
dst-port	Destination port number
src-dst-port	Source and destination port number

- All hash operations are performed on bits, except src-dst combo methods use XOR
- Port number only specified in CCNP Switch book as available in models 4500, 6500

Switch# **show etherchannel load-balance**

EtherChannel Load-Balancing Configuration:

src-mac

EtherChannel Load-Balancing Addresses Used Per-Protocol:

Non-IP: Source MAC address

IPv4: Source MAC address

IPv6: Source MAC address

To verify efficiency of load-balancing method use the **show etherchannel port-channel** command

EtherChannel Troubleshooting Commands

Current EtherChannel status of each member port	show etherchannel summary show etherchannel port
Time stamps of EtherChannel changes	show etherchannel port-channel
Detailed status about each EtherChannel component	show etherchannel detail
Load-balancing hashing algorithm	show etherchannel load-balance
Load-balancing port index used by hashing algorithm	show etherchannel port-channel
EtherChannel neighbors on each port	show {pagg lacp} neighbor
LACP system ID	show lacp sys-id

EtherChannel Configuration Commands

Select load-balancing method for switch.	port-channel load-balance method
Use a PAgP mode on an interface.	channel-protocol pagp channel-group number mode {on {{auto desirable} [non-silent]}}
Assign the LACP system priority.	lacp system-priority priority
Use an LACP mode on an interface.	channel-protocol lacp channel-group number mode {on passive active} lacp port-priority priority
Configure EtherChannel Guard	[no] spanning-tree etherchannel guard misconfig

From SVI section

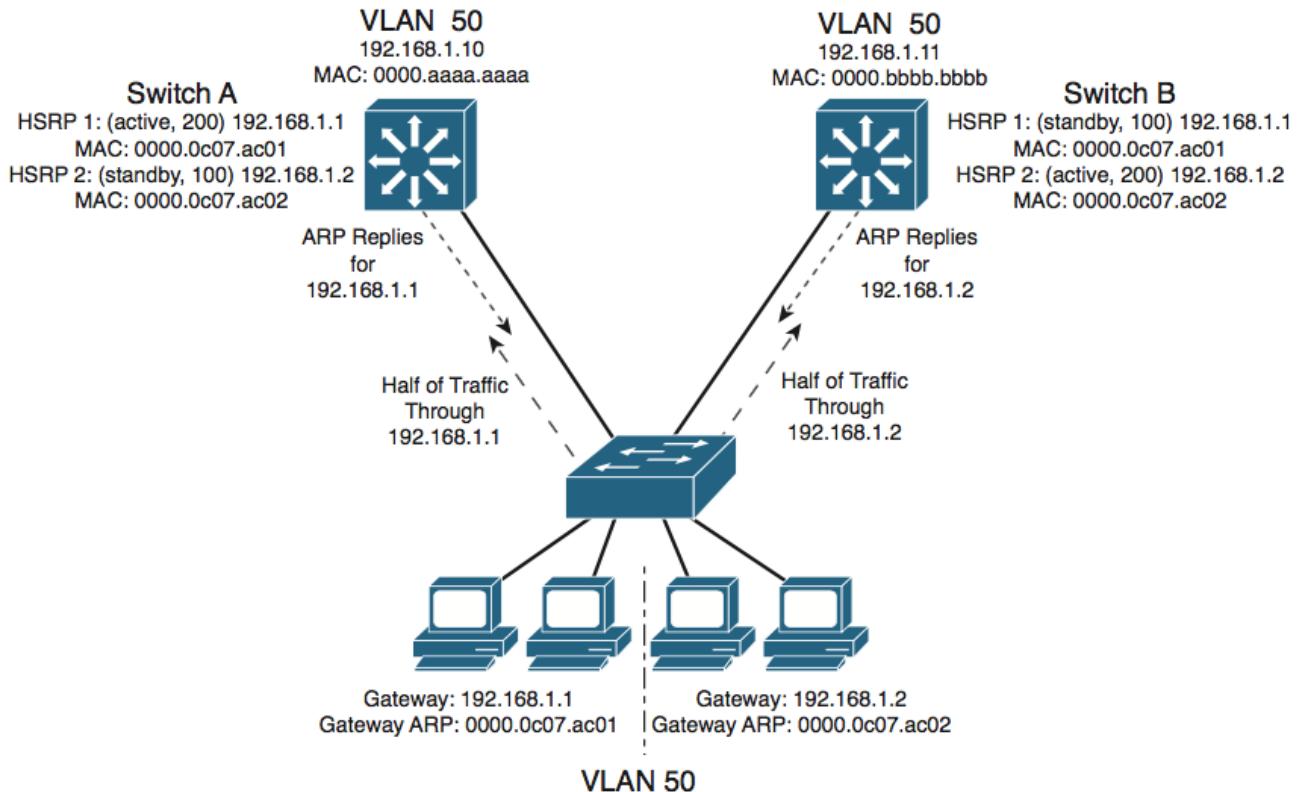
Keep in mind that a Layer 3 port assigns a network address to one specific physical interface. If several interfaces are bundled as an EtherChannel, the EtherChannel can also become a Layer 3 port. In that case, the network address is assigned to the port-channel interface—not to the individual physical links within the channel.

HSRP and VRRP Load Balancing Example [two HSRP groups, one VLAN]

Load balancing traffic across two uplinks to two HSRP routers with a single HSRP group is not possible.

We must use two HSRP groups where each group assigns an active router to one of the switches

- Make each switch function as the standby router for its partner's HSRP group.
- (Each router is active for one group and standby for the other group)
- Switch A is active router for Group 1 (192.168.1.1), and standby for Group 2 (192.168.1.2).
- Switch B is configured similarly, but with its roles reversed.
- Configure half of the PCs with the Group 1 virtual router address and the other half with the Group 2 address.
- Each half of the hosts uses one switch as its default gateway over one uplink

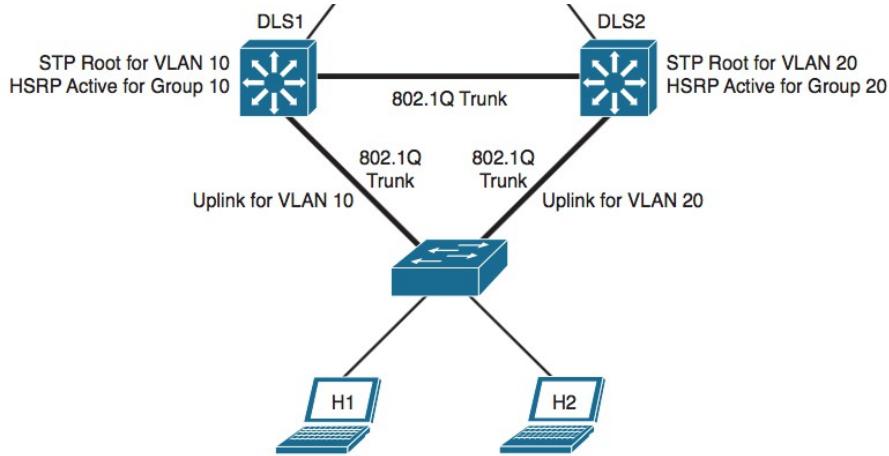


HSRP Version	VRRP Version (minus authentication)
<pre>Switch-A(config)# interface vlan 50 Switch-A(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0 Switch-A(config-if)# standby 1 priority 200 Switch-A(config-if)# standby 1 preempt Switch-A(config-if)# standby 1 ip 192.168.1.1 Switch-A(config-if)# standby 2 priority 100 Switch-A(config-if)# standby 2 ip 192.168.1.2 Switch-B(config)# interface vlan 50 Switch-B(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.11 255.255.255.0 Switch-B(config-if)# standby 1 priority 100 Switch-B(config-if)# standby 1 ip 192.168.1.1 Switch-B(config-if)# standby 2 priority 200 Switch-B(config-if)# standby 2 preempt Switch-B(config-if)# standby 2 ip 192.168.1.2</pre>	<pre>Switch-A(config)# interface vlan 50 Switch-A(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0 Switch-A(config-if)# vrrp 1 priority 200 Switch-A(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.1.1 Switch-A(config-if)# vrrp 2 priority 100 Switch-A(config-if)# no vrrp 2 preempt Switch-A(config-if)# vrrp 2 ip 192.168.1.2 Switch-B(config)# interface vlan 50 Switch-B(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.11 255.255.255.0 Switch-B(config-if)# vrrp 1 priority 100 Switch-B(config-if)# no vrrp 1 preempt Switch-B(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.1.1 Switch-B(config-if)# vrrp 2 priority 200 Switch-B(config-if)# vrrp 2 ip 192.168.1.2</pre>

HSRP Load Balancing Example 2

[two HSRP groups, two VLANs, Spanning Tree roots (primary and secondary)]

- configure DLS1 as STP root, HSRP active for VLAN 10 - also backup root and HSRP standby for VLAN 20
- configure DLS2 as STP root, HSRP active for VLAN 20 - also backup root and HSRP standby for VLAN 10.
- The configuration for DLS2 below is basically the opposite of what DLS1 has.



STP forwarding to the correct VLANs ensured by setting spanning-tree primary root for those VLANs.

DLS1(config)#spanning-tree vlan 10 root primary	Configures STP root primary for VLAN 10.
DLS1(config)#spanning-tree vlan 20 root secondary	Configures STP root secondary for VLAN 20.
DLS1(config)#interface vlan10	Moves to interface configuration mode.
DLS1(config-if)#ip address 10.1.10.2 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
DLS1(config-if)#standby 10 ip 10.1.10.1	Activates HSRP group 10, virtual IP of 10.1.10.1
DLS1(config-if)#standby 10 priority 110	Assigns a priority value of 110 to standby group 10. This will be the active forwarder for VLAN 10.
DLS1(config-if)#standby 10 preempt	Switch will take control of VLAN 10 forwarding if local priority is higher than active switch VLAN 10 priority.
DLS1(config-if)#interface vlan20	Moves to interface configuration mode.
DLS1(config-if)#ip address 10.1.20.2 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
DLS1(config-if)#standby 20 ip 10.1.20.1	Activate HSRP group 20, virtual IP address 10.1.20.1.
DLS1(config-if)#standby 20 priority 90	Assigns a priority value of 90 to standby group 20. This switch will be the standby device for VLAN 20.
DLS1(config-if)#standby 20 preempt	This switch will take control of VLAN 20 forwarding if local priority is higher than active switch for VLAN 20

DLS2(config)#spanning-tree vlan 20 root primary	Configures STP root primary for VLAN 20.
DLS2(config)#spanning-tree vlan 10 root secondary	Configures STP root secondary for VLAN 10.
DLS2(config)#interface vlan20	Moves to interface configuration mode.
DLS2(config-if)#ip address 10.1.20.3 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
DLS2(config-if)#standby 20 ip 10.1.20.1	Activates HSRP group 10, virtual IP of 10.1.20.1
DLS2(config-if)#standby 20 priority 110	Assigns a priority value of 110 to standby group 20. This will be the active forwarder for VLAN 10.
DLS2(config-if)#standby 20 preempt	Switch will take control of VLAN 20 forwarding if local priority is higher than active switch VLAN 20 priority.
DLS2(config-if)#interface vlan10	Moves to interface configuration mode.
DLS2(config-if)#ip address 10.1.10.3 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
DLS2(config-if)#standby 10 ip 10.1.10.1	Activate HSRP group 10, virtual IP address 10.1.10.1.
DLS2(config-if)#standby 10 priority 90	Assigns a priority value of 90 to standby group 10. This switch will be the standby device for VLAN 10.
DLS2(config-if)#standby 10 preempt	This switch will take control of VLAN 20 forwarding if local priority is higher than active switch for VLAN 10

HSRP Load Balancing Example 1 (cont.)
(output of "show standby" command)

```
Switch-A# show standby vlan 50 brief
    P indicates configured to preempt.
    |
Interface  Grp Prio P State      Active addr      Standby addr      Group addr
V150       1   200  P Active     local            192.168.1.11    192.168.1.1
V150       2   100  Standby    192.168.1.11    local           192.168.1.2
Switch-A#
Switch-A# show standby vlan 50
Vlan50 - Group 1

    Local state is Active, priority 200, may preempt
    Hellotime 3 sec, holdtime 10 sec
    Next hello sent in 2.248
    Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.1 configured
    Active router is local
    Standby router is 192.168.1.11 expires in 9.860
    Virtual mac address is 0000.0c07.ac01
    Authentication text "MyKey"
    2 state changes, last state change 00:11:58
    IP redundancy name is "hsrp-Vl50-1" (default)
Vlan50 - Group 2

    Local state is Standby, priority 100
    Hellotime 3 sec, holdtime 10 sec
    Next hello sent in 1.302
    Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.2 configured
    Active router is 192.168.1.11, priority 200 expires in 7.812
    Standby router is local
    Authentication text "MyKey"
    4 state changes, last state change 00:10:04
    IP redundancy name is "hsrp-Vl50-2" (default)
```

Switch B is the same, just flipped.

VRRP Load Balancing example - output of "show" commands

Table 18-3 Verifying VRRP Status for multiple VRRP Groups

Switch A	Switch B
Switch-A# show vrrp	Switch-B# show vrrp
Vlan50 - Group 1	Vlan50 - Group 1
State is Master	State is Backup
Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.1	Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.1
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0101	Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0101
Advertisement interval is 1.000 sec	Advertisement interval is 1.000 sec
Preemption is enabled	Preemption is disabled
min delay is 0.000 sec	Priority is 100
Priority is 200	Authentication is enabled
Authentication is enabled	Master Router is 192.168.1.10, priority
Master Router is 192.168.1.10 (local),	is 200
priority is 200	Master Advertisement interval is 1.000
Master Advertisement interval is 1.000	sec
sec	Master Down interval is 3.609 sec
Master Down interval is 3.218 sec	(expires in 2.833 sec)
Vlan50 - Group 2	Vlan50 - Group 2
State is Backup	State is Master
Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.2	Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.2
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0102	Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0102
Advertisement interval is 1.000 sec	Advertisement interval is 1.000 sec
Preemption is disabled	Preemption is enabled
Priority is 100	min delay is 0.000 sec
Authentication is enabled	Priority is 200
Master Router is 192.168.1.11, priority	Authentication is enabled
is 200	Master Router is 192.168.1.11 (local),
Master Advertisement interval is 1.000	priority is 200
sec	Master Advertisement interval is 1.000
Master Down interval is 3.609 sec	sec
(expires in 2.977 sec)	Master Down interval is 3.218 sec
Switch-A#	Switch-B#
Switch-A# show vrrp brief	
Interface	Grp Pri Time Own Pre State Master addr Group addr
Vlan50	1 200 3218 Y Master 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.1
Vlan50	2 100 3609 Y Backup 192.168.1.11 192.168.1.2
Switch-A#	
Switch-B# show vrrp brief	
Interface	Grp Pri Time Own Pre State Master addr Group addr
Vlan50	1 100 3609 Y Backup 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.1
Vlan50	2 200 3218 Y Master 192.168.1.11 192.168.1.2
Switch-B#	

IEEE Standard: VRRP - Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (RFC 2338)

Almost the same as HSRP. Here, "master" takes the place of "active" in HSRP terms, and the rest are termed "backup." The VRRP preempt option is enabled by default (the switch that is the IP address owner will preempt, regardless of this explicit setting). Default preempt delay is 0 sec (easily extended)

- Group number can be from 1- 255; Priority range 1-254. The default is 100.
- The virtual router MAC is of the form 0000.5e00.01xx, where xx is a two-digit hex group number.
- Sends advertisements to multicast 224.0.0.18 (VRRP), using IP protocol 112
- Uses a timer for advertisements by the virtual switch master.
- All switches in a group must use the same timer values, or the group will not communicate.
- Default interval value is 1 sec, range is 1-255 sec. If you use the msec argument, you change the timer globally to measure in milliseconds. The range then is 50 to 999ms.

Switch(config)#interface vlan10	(all of these are interface config mode)
ip address 172.16.100.5 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask to VLAN interface.
vrrp 10 ip 172.16.100.1	Enables VRRP group 10 virtual IP of 172.16.100.1 (using a real interface IP here will make the router with that address become the master)
vrrp 10 description Sales Group	Assigns a text description to the group.
vrrp 10 priority 110	Sets the priority level for this VLAN.
vrrp 10 preempt	This switch will take over as virtual switch master for group 10 if it has a higher priority than the current one
vrrp 10 preempt delay minimum 60	This switch will preempt, only after a delay of 60 sec
vrrp 10 timers advertise 15	Configures the interval between successful advertisements by the virtual switch master.
vrrp 10 timers learn	Configures a virtual switch backup, to learn the advertisement interval from the virtual switch master.
(no) vrrp 10 shutdown	Disables/ re-enables VRRP on the interface, in a way that the configuration is still retained.
no vrrp 10 shutdown	Reenables the VRRP group using the previous configuration.
vrrp 10 authentication text ottawa	Plain-text auth for group 10 using the key ottawa .
vrrp 10 authentication md5 key-string winnipeg	MD5 auth for group 10 using the key winnipeg .

Interface Object Tracking

VRRP does not have a native interface tracking mechanism, but even better, has the ability to track objects. This allows the VRRP master to lose its status if a tracked object (interface, IP SLA, and so on) fails.

track 10 interface fastethernet0/0 line-protocol	Creates a tracked object, where the status of the uplink interface is tracked
interface fastethernet0/1	
vrrp 1 track 10 decrement 30	Track previously created object and decrease the VRRP priority by 30 should the uplink interface fail

Verifying VRRP (same for IPv6 and IPv4)

Switch#show vrrp	Displays VRRP information
Switch#show vrrp brief	Displays a brief status of all VRRP groups
Switch#show vrrp 10	Displays detailed information about VRRP group 10
Switch#show vrrp interface vlan10	Displays info about VRRP enabled on int Vlan10
Switch#show vrrp interface vlan10 brief	Displays a brief summary about VRRP on int Vlan10

Debugging VRRP

Switch#debug vrrp all	Displays all VRRP messages
Switch#debug vrrp error	Displays all VRRP error messages
Switch#debug vrrp events	Displays all VRRP event messages
Switch#debug vrrp packets	Displays messages about packets sent and received
Switch#debug vrrp state	Displays messages about state transitions

VRRP is only partially supported on some Cisco hardware. Verify VRRP capabilities by platform datasheets and appropriate Cisco IOS command and configuration guides.

Cisco Proprietary: HSRP - Hot Standby Redundancy Protocol

interface vlan10	Make VLAN an interface - activate switch virtual interface (SVI)
ip address 172.16.0.10 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
standby 1 ip 172.16.0.1 [secondary]	Activates HSRP group 1 and creates virtual IP address of 172.16.0.1 If interface has secondary IP addresses, you can add secondary so HSRP has a redundant secondary gateway address.
standby 1 priority 120	Assigns a priority value of 120 to standby group 1.

- Group number can be from 0 to 255. The default is 0.
- Some Catalyst switches limit to 16 unique group numbers- just make the group number the same (that is, 1) for every VLAN interface. HSRP groups are locally significant only on an interface: HSRP Group 1 on interface VLAN 10 is unique and independent from HSRP Group 1 on interface VLAN 11.
- The actual interface address and the virtual (standby) address must be configured to be in the same subnet.
- Priority value 1-255, default is 100. A higher priority will result in that switch being elected the active switch.
- If priorities of all switches in the group are equal, switch with highest IP address becomes active switch.
- HSRP hello messages - multicast 224.0.0.2 ("all routers") - UDP port 1985.
- Only the standby router (with the second-highest priority) monitors hello messages from the active router.
- Decreasing hello time allows a router failure to be detected more quickly, yet increases traffic on the interface.

Router interface states before becoming active:

Disabled => Init=> Listen => Speak => Standby => Active

- HSRP defines a virtual MAC address in the form 0000.0c07.acxx, where xx represents the group number as a two-digit hex value. (Group 1 appears as 0000.0c07.ac01, Group 16 appears as 0000.0c07.ac1, etc.)

show standby	Displays HSRP information
show standby brief	Displays single-line output summary of each standby group
show standby vlan 1	Displays HSRP information on the VLAN 1 group

Defaults for HSRP

HSRP version	Version 1 (v1 and v2 have different packet structure)
HSRP groups	None configured.
Standby group number	0
Standby MAC address	System assigned as 0000.0c07.acXX, where XX is the HSRP group number. For HSRPv2, the MAC address will be 0000.0C9F.FXXX.
Standby priority	100
Standby delay	0 (no delay)
Standby track interface priority	10
Standby hello time	3 seconds
Standby holdtime	10 seconds

Preempt - switch will take control of the active switch if local priority is higher than priority of active switch

interface vlan10	
standby 1 preempt	Designate this switch to preempt
standby 1 preempt delay minimum 180 reload 140	Set to preempt 180 sec since that switch was last restarted or 140 sec since switch was last reloaded.
standby delay minimum 30 reload 60	Delay for HSRP group initialization 30 sec when interface comes up and 60 sec after switch reloads.
no standby 1 preempt delay	Disables the preemption delay
no standby 1 preempt	Disable the preempt option completely

If a router is not already active, it cannot become active again until the current active router fails- even if its priority is higher than that of the active router. When routers are just being powered up or added to a network, the first router to bring up its interface becomes the HSRP active router, even if it has the lowest priority of all. This is where setting up preempt comes to the rescue.

- Use **reload** to force router to wait after it has been reloaded or restarted before preempt (you should consider and allow time for routing protocols (e.g.) that need time to converge). Use of **minimum** only refers to time after interface is ready for HSRP

Timers - Hello timer 1-254, default is 3; Hold timer 1-255, default is 10. The default unit of time is seconds.

interface vlan10	
standby 1 timers 5 15	Sets the hello to 5 sec and hold to 15 sec
	Hold normally set to be \geq 3X hello
standby 1 timers msec 200 msec 600	Sets hello to 200 milliseconds, hold to 600 msec.

If the **msec** argument is used, the timers can be an integer from 15 to 999

Track - assigns a value that the priority will be decreased if the tracked interface goes down

Switch(config)#interface vlan10	
Switch(config-if)#standby 1 track f0/0 25	HSRP will track the availability of interface FastEthernet0/0. If it goes down, the priority of the switch in group 1 will be decremented by 25.

Default value of the **track** is 10. In the example, assuming default priority of 100, the new priority will be 75. Using track facilitates in election eligibility when failures occur and replacement candidates must be considered.

Authentication

Switch(config)#key chain HSRP	Creates authentication key chain called HSRP .
Switch(config-keychain)#key 1	Adds a first key to the key chain.
Switch(config-keychain-key)#key-string australia	Configures a key string of australia .
Switch(config)#interface vlan10	
Switch(config-if)#standby 1 authentication text canada	Configures canada as plain-text authentication string used by group 1.
Switch(config-if)#standby 2 authentication md5 key-string england	Configures england as MD5 key string for group 2.
Switch(config-if)#standby 3 authentication md5 key-chain HSRP	Configures MD5 using key chain HSRP . Queries key chain for current live key and key ID.

HSRPv2 for IPv6

HSRPv2 must be enabled on an interface before HSRP for IPv6 can be configured.

When configuring the IPv6 virtual address, if an IPv6 global address is used, it must include an IPv6 prefix length. If a link-local address is used, it does not have a prefix

standby version 2	Enables HSRPv2 on an interface
standby 1 ipv6 autoconfig	Use a virtual link-local address that will be generated automatically from the link-local prefix and a modified EUI-64 format interface identifier, where the EUI-64 interface identifier is created from the relevant HSRP virtual MAC address
standby 1 ipv6 FE80::1:1	Use an explicitly configured link-local address to be used as the virtual IPv6 address for group 1
standby 1 ipv6 2001::0DB8:2/64	Use a global IPv6 address as the virtual address for group 1

All other relevant HSRP commands (preempt, priority, authentication, tracking, and so on) are identical in HSRPv1 and HSRPv2.

Debugging HSRP

debug standby	All HSRP debugging information, including state changes and transmission/ reception of HSRP packets
debug standby terse	All HSRP errors, events, and packets, except for hellos and advertisements
debug standby errors	Displays HSRP error messages
debug standby events	Displays HSRP event messages
debug standby events terse	Displays all HSRP events except for hellos and advertisements
debug standby events track	Displays all HSRP tracking events
debug standby packets	Displays HSRP packet messages

Cisco Proprietary: GLBP - Gateway Load Balancing Protocol

Introduced in Cisco IOS 12.2(14)S for routers, but is not consistently supported across all switching platforms.

- Group members elect one gateway to be the **active virtual gateway (AVG)**.
 - Members are **active virtual forwarders (AVF)**, backup for AVG in the event it becomes unavailable.
 - The AVG assigns a different virtual MAC address to each AVF (which becomes their identifier).
 - Each AVF assumes responsibility for forwarding packets sent to the virtual MAC address assigned
 - If an AVF fails, one of others assumes responsibility for the virtual MAC address.
 - Precedence is highest priority value, or the highest IP address in the group
 - Automatic selection and simultaneous use of multiple available gateways; automatic failover
 - No configuring multiple groups or multiple default gateway configurations like HSRP/VRRP
 - Maximum of four routers in each forwarding group. Technically the AVG is also an AVF (it is just "special")
 - Up to 1024 virtual routers as GLBP groups on each router's physical interface (number range 0-1023)
 - Up to four AVFs per group at a time, secondaries can be backups if one fails
-
- Priority is 1- 255, default 100. A higher number is preferred.
 - Preemption is disabled by default for AVG; AVF preempt has default delay of 30 seconds.
 - Hello timer default 3 sec; range 1-60 sec. If msec argument is used, the timer will switch to msec, range of 50- 60,000 msec.
 - Hold timer default 10 sec; range 19-180 sec. If msec argument is used, the timer will switch to msec, range of 18,020-180,000 msec.
 - Hello messages - multicast 224.0.0.102 - UDP 3222.
 - Virtual MAC have the form 0007.b4xx.xxyy. The 16-bit value denoted by xx.xx represents six 0 bits followed by a 10-bit GLBP group number. The 8-bit yy value is the virtual forwarder number.

Three different types of load balancing

Host-dependent uses MAC address of a host to determine which AVF MAC address to use.

- The option if using stateful NAT (needs each host to be returned to the same virtual MAC address each time it sends an ARP request for the virtual IP address)
- Not recommended for where there are fewer than 20 end hosts.

Weighted - place a weight on each device when calculating the amount of load sharing.

- If router A has twice the forwarding capacity of router B, weighting value should be configured accordingly
- Use the **glbp x weighting y** where **x** is the GLBP group number, and **y** is the weighting value (1-254)

Round-robin (default) each AVF MAC is used sequentially in ARP replies for virtual IP address.

- If no load balancing is used, GLBP will operate like HSRP, where the AVG will only respond to ARP requests with its own AVF MAC address, and all traffic will be directed to the AVG. Use **no glbp load-balancing**.

It is recommended that unless you are extremely familiar with your network design and mechanisms of GLBP that you don't change the timers. Reset timers back to default **no glbp x timers**, where x is group number.

Router(config)#interface fastethernet0/0	(all of these are interface config mode)
ip address 172.16.100.5 255.255.255.0	Assigns IP address and netmask.
glbp 10 ip 172.16.100.1	Put group 10 on this int w/ virtual IP of 172.16.100.1.
glbp 10 preempt	Take over as AVG for group 10 if this router has higher priority than current AVG
glbp 10 preempt delay minimum 60	Wait before preempt AVG- delay of 60 seconds
glbp 10 forwarder preempt	Take over as AVF for group 10 if this router has higher priority than current AVF.
glbp 10 forwarder preempt delay minimum 60	Wait before preempt AVF- delay of 60 seconds
glbp 10 priority 150	Sets the priority level of the router.
glbp 10 timers 5 15	Configures the hello timer 5 sec and the hold 15 sec
glbp 10 timers msec 20200 msec 60600	Hello timer 20,200 msec hold timer to 60,600 millisec
glbp 10 authentication text edmonton	Configures GLBP for plain text authentication
glbp 10 authentication md5 key-chain vancouver	Configures GLBP for MD5 authentication
glbp 10 load- balancing host-dependent	Load balance using the host-dependent method.
glbp 10 load- balancing weighted	Load balance using the weighted method.
glbp 10 weighting 80	Set maximum weighting value for this interface
glbp 10 load balancing round robin	Load balance using the round-robin method.

Interface Tracking

Router(config)#track 2 interface fa0/1 line-protocol	Config FastEthernet0/1 interface to be tracked. The line-protocol tracks whether the interface is up
Router(config-track)#exit	Notice prompt "(config-track)" Use ? for more options
Router(config)#interface fastethernet0/0	
Router(config-if)#glbp 10 weighting 110 lower 20 upper 50	Initial weighting value; upper/lower thresholds, for GW
Router(config-if)#glbp 10 weighting track 2 decrement 50	Track the object and decrement the weight by 50 when the Fast Ethernet 0/1 interface fails

Verifying GLBP

Router#show glbp	Displays GLBP information
Router#show glbp brief	Displays a brief status of all GLBP groups
Router#show glbp 10	Displays information about GLBP group 10
Router#show glbp vlan10	Displays GLBP information on interface Vlan10
Router#show glbp vlan20 10	Displays GLBP group 10 info on interface Vlan20

Debugging GLBP

Router#debug condition glbp	Displays GLBP condition messages
Router#debug glbp errors	Displays all GLBP error messages
Router#debug glbp events	Displays all GLBP event messages
Router#debug glbp packets	Displays messages about packets sent and received
Router#debug glbp terse	Displays a limited range of debugging messages

A redirect timer is used to determine when the AVG will stop using a stale virtual MAC address in ARP replies. The AVF corresponding to the old address continues to act as a stand-in gateway for any clients that try to use it.

When the timeout timer expires, the old MAC address and the virtual forwarder using it are flushed from all the GLBP peers. The AVG assumes that the previously failed AVF will not return to service, so the resources assigned to it must be reclaimed.

At this point, clients still using the old MAC address in their ARP caches must refresh the entry to obtain the new virtual MAC address.

The redirect timer defaults to 600 seconds (10 minutes) and can range from 0 to 3600 seconds (1 hour). The timeout timer defaults to 14,400 seconds (4 hours) and can range from 700 to 64,800 seconds (18 hours). You can adjust these timers with the following interface configuration command:

Switch(config-if)# **glbp group timers redirect redirect timeout**

Switch(config)# **track object-number interface type member/module/number {line- protocol | ip routing}**

The object-number is an arbitrary index (1 to 500) that is used for weight adjustment. The condition that triggers an adjustment can be **line-protocol** (the interface line protocol is up) or **ip routing**. (IP routing is enabled, the interface has an IP address, and the interface is up.)

GLBP can also be used with IPv6. Rather than specifying an IPv6 address, use the following command to autoconfigure the address:

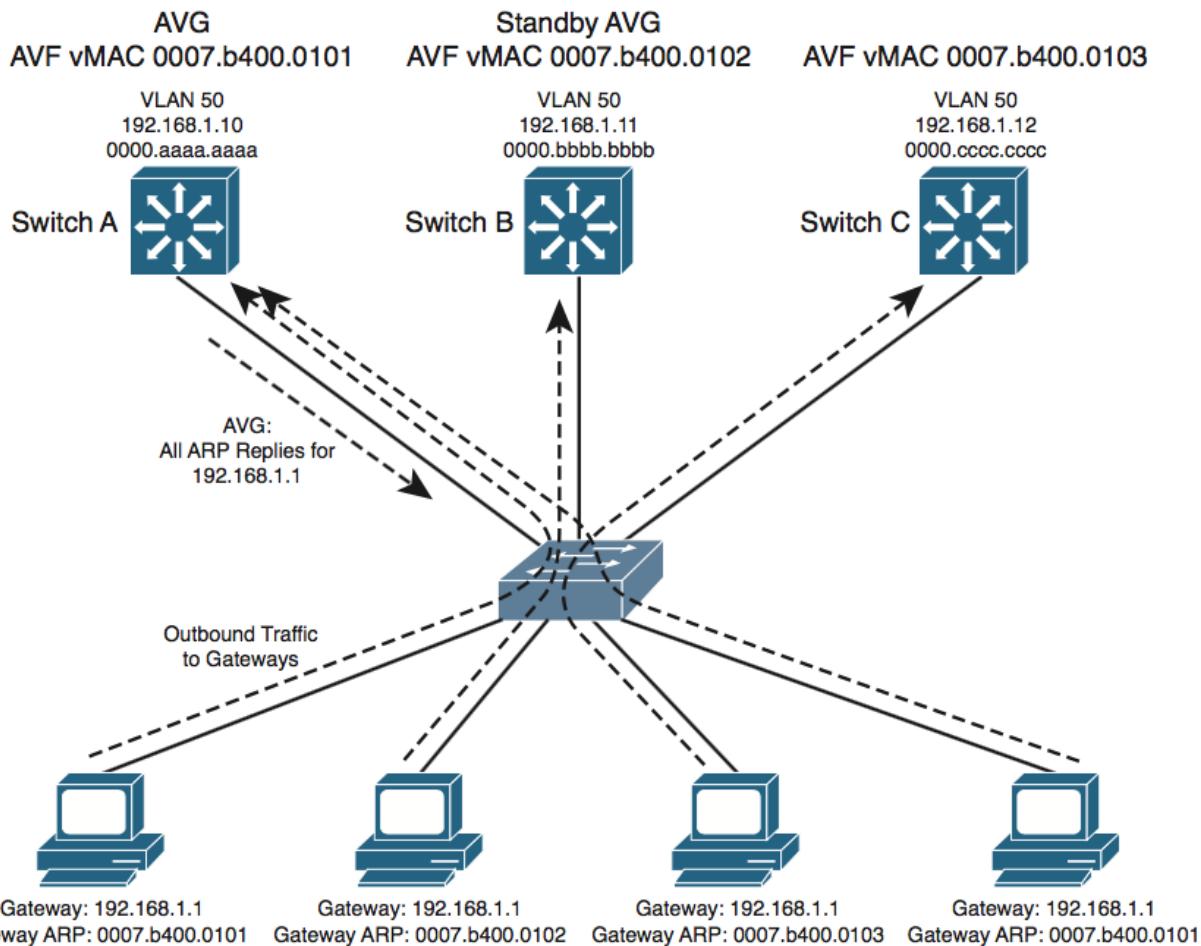
Switch(config-if)# **glbp group ipv6 autoconfigure**

Typical 3 Switch GLBP Setup Example

Three multilayer switches participating in a common GLBP group, with switch A elected AVG, to coordinate the GLBP process, answer all ARP requests for the virtual router 192.168.1.1.

It has identified itself, and other two switches as AVFs for the group, using default round-robin load balancing, so each of the client PCs sends an ARP request to look for the virtual router address (192.168.1.1) in turn, from left to right. Each time the AVG replies, the next sequential virtual MAC is sent back to a client. After the fourth PC sends a request, all three virtual MAC addresses (and AVF routers) have been used, so the AVG cycles back to the first virtual MAC address.

One GLBP group has been configured, clients know of only one gateway IP address: 192.168.1.1, all uplinks are being used, and all routers are proportionately forwarding traffic.



```
Switch-A(config)# interface vlan 50
Switch-A(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0
Switch-A(config-if)# glbp 1 priority 200
Switch-A(config-if)# glbp 1 preempt
Switch-A(config-if)# glbp 1 ip 192.168.1.1
```

```
Switch-B(config)# interface vlan 50
Switch-B(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.11 255.255.255.0
Switch-B(config-if)# glbp 1 priority 150
Switch-B(config-if)# glbp 1 preempt
Switch-B(config-if)# glbp 1 ip 192.168.1.1
```

```
Switch-C(config)# interface vlan 50
Switch-C(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.12 255.255.255.0
Switch-C(config-if)# glbp 1 priority 100
Switch-C(config-if)# glbp 1 ip 192.168.1.1
```

You can verify GLBP operation with the **show glbp [brief]** command. With the **brief** keyword, the GLBP roles are summarized showing the interface, GLBP group number (Grp), virtual forwarder number (Fwd), GLBP priority (Pri), state, and addresses.

```
Switch-A# show glbp brief
Interface  Grp  Fwd  Pri  State    Address      Active router  Standby router
V150       1     -    200  Active   192.168.1.1   local        192.168.1.11
V150       1     1    7    Active   0007.b400.0101  local        -
V150       1     2    7    Listen   0007.b400.0102  192.168.1.11  -
V150       1     3    7    Listen   0007.b400.0103  192.168.1.12  -
```

Switch-A#

```
Switch-B# show glbp brief
Interface  Grp  Fwd  Pri  State    Address      Active router  Standby router
V150       1     -    150  Standby  192.168.1.1   192.168.1.10  local
V150       1     1    7    Listen   0007.b400.0101  192.168.1.10  -
V150       1     2    7    Active   0007.b400.0102  local        -
V150       1     3    7    Listen   0007.b400.0103  192.168.1.12  -
```

Switch-B#

```
Switch-C# show glbp brief
Interface  Grp  Fwd  Pri  State    Address      Active router  Standby router
V150       1     -    100  Listen   192.168.1.1   192.168.1.10  192.168.1.11
V150       1     1    7    Listen   0007.b400.0101  192.168.1.10  -
V150       1     2    7    Listen   0007.b400.0102  192.168.1.11  -
V150       1     3    7    Active   0007.b400.0103  local        -
```

Notice that Switch A is shown to be the AVG because it has a dash in the Fwd column and is in the Active state. It also is acting as AVF for virtual forwarder number 1.

Because the GLBP group has three routers, there are three virtual forwarders and virtual MAC addresses.

Switch A is in the Listen state for forwarders number 2 and 3, waiting to be given an active role in case one of those AVFs fails.

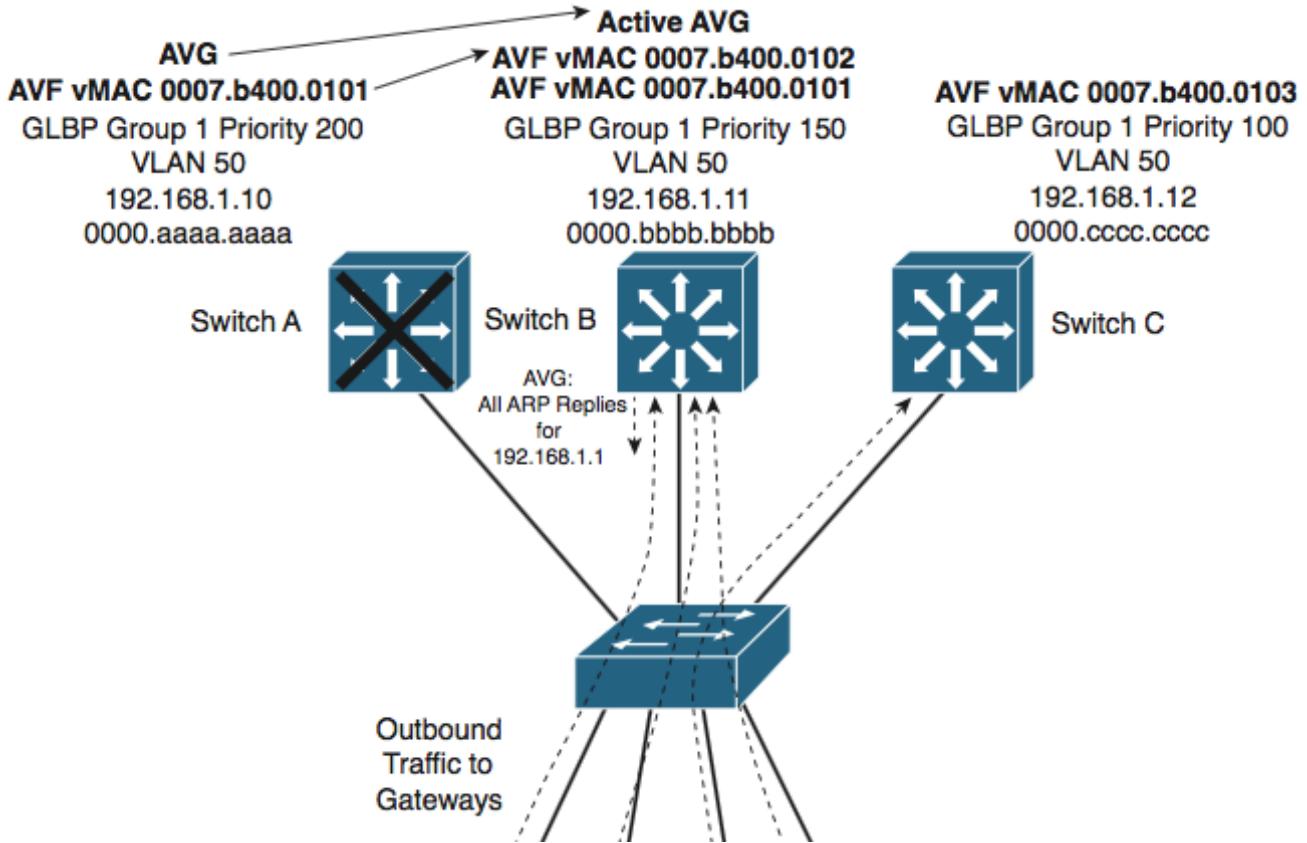
Switch B is shown to have the Standby role, waiting to take over in case the AVG fails. It is the AVF for virtual forwarder number 2.

Finally, Switch C has the lowest GLBP priority, so it stays in the Listen state, waiting for the active or standby AVG to fail. It is also the AVF for virtual forwarder number 3.

Taking off the **brief** keyword and just using **show glbp** displays more detailed info about config and status

The AVG here shows the virtual forwarder roles it has assigned to each of the routers in the GLBP group.

```
Switch-A# show glbp
Vlan50 - Group 1
  State is Active
    7 state changes, last state change 03:28:05
  Virtual IP address is 192.168.1.1
  Hello time 3 sec, hold time 10 sec
    Next hello sent in 1.672 secs
  Redirect time 600 sec, forwarder time-out 14400 sec
  Preemption enabled, min delay 0 sec
  Active is local
    Standby is 192.168.1.11, priority 150 (expires in 9.632 sec)
    Priority 200 (configured)
    Weighting 100 (default 100), thresholds: lower 1, upper 100
    Load balancing: round-robin
    There are 3 forwarders (1 active)
  Forwarder 1
    State is Active
      3 state changes, last state change 03:27:37
      MAC address is 0007.b400.0101 (default)
      Owner ID is 00d0.0229.b80a
      Redirection enabled
      Preemption enabled, min delay 30 sec
      Active is local, weighting 100
  Forwarder 2
    State is Listen
      MAC address is 0007.b400.0102 (learnt)
      Owner ID is 0007.b372.dc4a
      Redirection enabled, 598.308 sec remaining (maximum 600 sec)
      Time to live: 14398.308 sec (maximum 14400 sec)
      Preemption enabled, min delay 30 sec
      Active is 192.168.1.11 (primary), weighting 100 (expires in 8.308 sec)
  Forwarder 3
    State is Listen
      MAC address is 0007.b400.0103 (learnt)
      Owner ID is 00d0.ff8a.2c0a
      Redirection enabled, 599.892 sec remaining (maximum 600 sec)
      Time to live: 14399.892 sec (maximum 14400 sec)
      Preemption enabled, min delay 30 sec
      Active is 192.168.1.12 (primary), weighting 100 (expires in 9.892 sec)
```



Redundancy is also inherent in the GLBP group: Switch A is the AVG, but the next-highest priority router can take over if the AVG fails.

All routers have been given an AVF role for a unique virtual MAC address in the group.

If one AVF fails, some clients remember the last-known virtual MAC address that was handed out. Therefore, another of the routers also takes over the AVF role for the failed router, causing the virtual MAC address to remain alive at all times.

Above is illustrated how these redundancy features react when the current active AVG fails. Before its failure, Switch A was the AVG because of its higher GLBP priority.

After it failed, Switch B became the AVG, answering ARP requests with the appropriate virtual MAC address for gateway 192.168.1.1.

Switch A also had been acting as an AVF, participating in the gateway load balancing.

Switch B also picks up this responsibility, using its virtual MAC address 0007.b400.0102 along with the one Switch A had been using, 0007.b400.0101.

Therefore, any hosts that know the gateway by any of its virtual MAC addresses still can reach a live gateway or AVF.

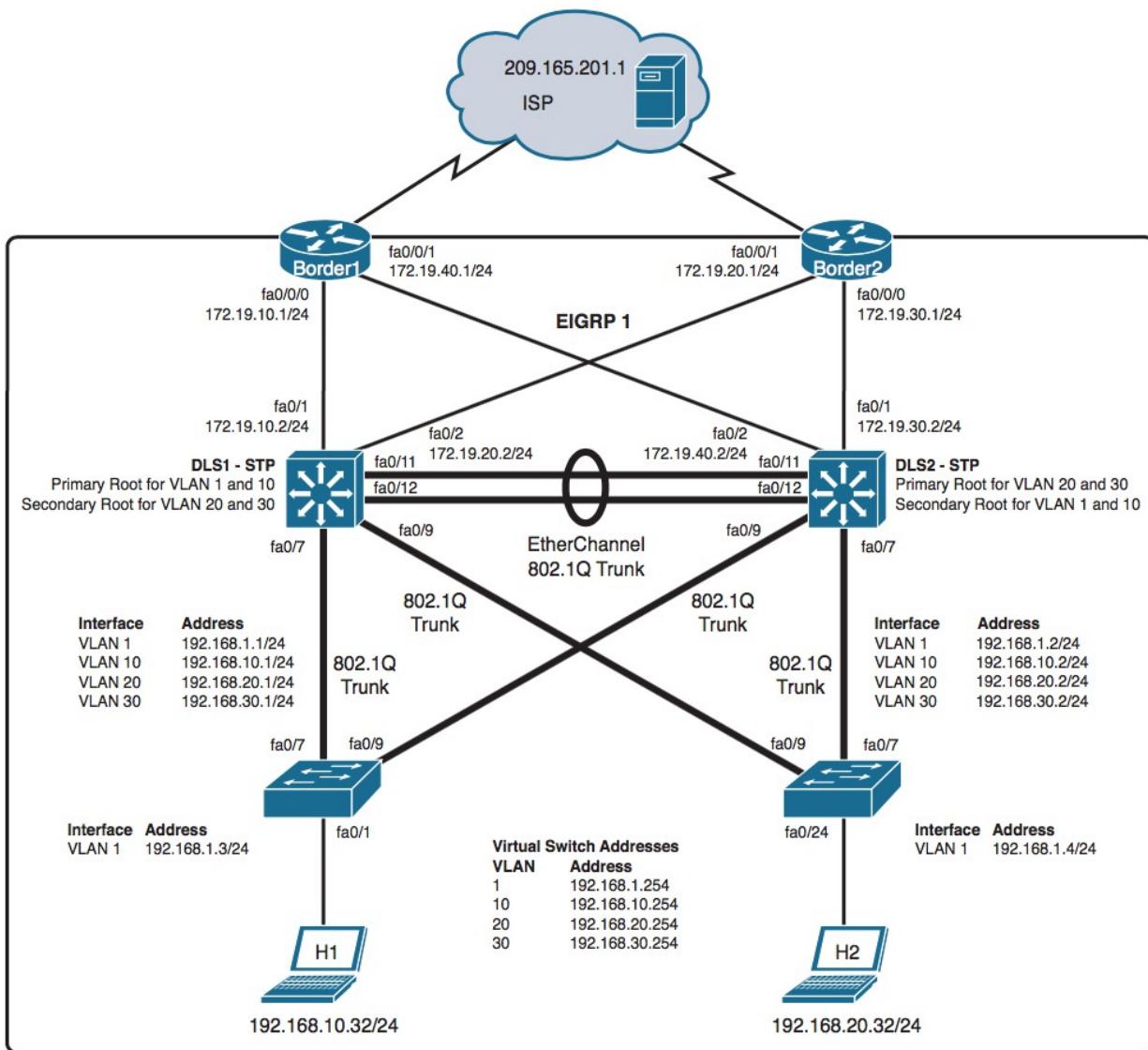


Figure 13-2 Network Topology for HSRP Configuration Example

DHCP Setup on Cisco Devices (IPv4)

```
Switch(config)#service dhcp -- makes sure it's enabled - "no service dhcp" turns it off  
Switch(config)#ip dhcp pool Sales_Wireless --create the pool  
Switch(dhcp-config)#network 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0 -- netID and mask for pool  
Switch(dhcp-config)#default-router 192.168.10.1 --default gateway  
Switch(dhcp-config)#dns-server 4.4.4.4  
Switch(dhcp-config)#lease 3 12 15 --days, hours, minutes - default 24hours  
Switch(dhcp-config)#exit  
Switch(config)#ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.10.1 192.168.10.10
```

DHCP Relay

If you need to provide addresses from a DHCP server to hosts that aren't on the same LAN as the DHCP server, you can configure your router interface to relay DHCP client requests.

```
Router(config)#interface fa0/0  
Router(config-if)#ip helper-address 10.10.10.254
```

The router and fa0/0 are on 192.168.10.1. 10.10.10.254 is obviously on a different subnet, but is the DHCP server. ip helper-address forwards more than just DHCP client requests.

Verifying DHCP

```
show ip dhcp binding - Lists state information about each IP address currently leased  
show ip dhcp pool [poolname] - Lists scope of addresses, plus stats for leased addresses  
show ip dhcp server statistics - Lists DHCP server statistics  
show ip dhcp conflict - show duplicate addresses
```

More Pools Example

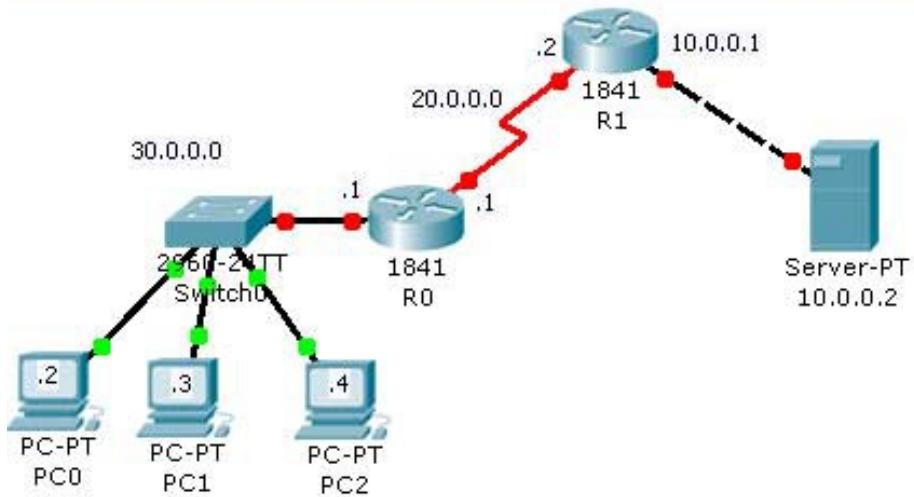
```
Corp#config t  
Corp(config)#ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.10.1  
Corp(config)#ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.20.1  
Corp(config)#ip dhcp pool SF_LAN  
Corp(dhcp-config)#network 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0  
Corp(dhcp-config)#default-router 192.168.10.1  
Corp(dhcp-config)#dns-server 4.4.4.4  
Corp(dhcp-config)#exit  
Corp(config)#ip dhcp pool LA_LAN  
Corp(dhcp-config)#network 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0  
Corp(dhcp-config)#default-router 192.168.20.1  
Corp(dhcp-config)#dns-server 4.4.4.4
```

Add these to the two routers so they will forward DHCP:

```
LA(config)#int f0/0  
LA(config-if)#ip helper-address 172.16.10.5
```

```
SF(config)#int f0/0  
SF(config-if)#ip helper-address 172.16.10.1
```

Network Address Translation : Static and Dynamic NAT and PAT



IPv4 Static NAT

```
R1(config-if)#ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
R1(config-if)#no shutdown
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R1(config-if)#ip address 20.0.0.2 255.0.0.0
R1(config-if)#no shutdown
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#ip route 30.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 20.0.0.1
R1(config)#ip nat inside source static 10.0.0.2 50.0.0.1
R1(config)#interface fastEthernet 0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat inside
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat outside
R1(config-if)#exit

R0(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
R0(config-if)#ip address 30.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
R0(config-if)#no shutdown
R0(config-if)#exit
R0(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R0(config-if)#ip address 20.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
R0(config-if)#clock rate 64000
R0(config-if)#bandwidth 64
R0(config-if)#no shutdown
R0(config-if)#exit
R0(config)#ip route 50.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 20.0.0.2
```

There is not direct route for 10.0.0.2. So PC from network of 30.0.0.0 will never know about it. They will access 50.0.0.1 as the web server IP. Ping 50.0.0.1 and it works. Ping 10.0.0.2 and you will get destination host unreachable error.

IP4 Dynamic NAT

This is using 192.168.0.0 network as internal. We have five public ip address 50.0.0.1 to 50.0.0.5 to use. Router1(1841 Router0) is going to be NAT device. Starting off by configuring Router1(1841 Router0):

```
R1(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
R1(config-if)#ip address 192.168.0.1 255.0.0.0
R1(config-if)#no shutdown
R1(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R1(config-if)#ip address 30.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
R1(config-if)#clock rate 64000
R1(config-if)#bandwidth 64
R1(config-if)#no shutdown
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 serial 0/0/0
R1(config)#access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 0.0.0.255
R1(config)#ip nat pool test 50.0.0.1 50.0.0.5 netmask 255.0.0.0
R1(config)#ip nat inside source list 1 pool test
R1(config)#interface fastEthernet 0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat inside
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat outside
R1(config-if)#exit

R1#debug ip nat
IP NAT debugging is on
NAT: s=192.168.0.7->50.0.0.1, d=20.0.0.2[1]
NAT*: s=20.0.0.2, d=50.0.0.1->192.168.0.7[1]
R1#no debug ip nat
IP NAT debugging is off
```

As you can see in output 192.168.0.5 is translated with 50.0.0.1 before leaving the router
Webpage loads as well.

IP4 PAT

If you have few global IP address and hundred of inside local address to translate. In such a situation you need to use PAT. This time we are using only one global IP address 50.0.0.1

```
R1(config)#access-list 1 permit 192.168.0.0 0.0.0.255
R1(config)#ip nat pool test 50.0.0.1 50.0.0.1 netmask 255.0.0.0
R1(config)#ip nat inside source list 1 pool test overload
R1(config)#interface fastEthernet 0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat inside
R1(config-if)#exit
R1(config)#interface serial 0/0/0
R1(config-if)#ip nat outside
R1(config-if)#exit
```

To verify PAT go on R1 and run show ip nat translations

```
R1#show ip nat translations
```

Protocol	Inside global	Inside local	Outside local	Outside global
icmp	50.0.0.1:1	192.168.0.7:1	20.0.0.2:1	20.0.0.2:1
icmp	50.0.0.1:2	192.168.0.7:2	20.0.0.2:2	20.0.0.2:2

Access Control Lists on Cisco Devices

Set ACL in global config, then apply to interfaces.

Put the right ACL on the right port! Outbound or inbound?

Put the ACL on the right device!

- standard ACLs should be close to destination, and extended ACLs close to source
- Prevent unnecessary network traffic that will just be denied by the subnet on the other side.
- Use as-needed granularity on the client end prevent a mass denial of traffic.

Corp(config)#access-list {1-99 | 1300-1999} - for standard

Corp(config)#access-list {100-199 | 2000-2699} - for IP extended access list

None of these source addresses should be ever be allowed to enter a production network:

Deny any source addresses from your internal networks.

Deny any local host (127.0.0.0/8) and reserved private addresses (RFC 1918).

Deny any addresses in the IP multicast address range (224.0.0.0/4).

Put most specific (single IPs) first. Subnet or range of subnets lower on list

Put permits first then place deny entries lower on the lists to filter properly

e.g.: Place 10.1.1.1 allow first, and have a later entry for deny 10.1.1.x for the rest of that subnet.

After adding restrictions (deny statements) append an explicit "permit any" at end of rules to counteract implicit deny. See the set ACLs listed in the running-config

You need to disable an ACL before making changes: no ip access-list 3

Corp(config)#access-list 10 [deny | permit | remark] [any | subnet | host] [wildcard (for subnets)]

Wildcard masks: for a block of addresses. Each block size must start at 0 or a multiple of the block size.

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255

Match the first two octets and that the last two octets can be any value

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.16.0 0.0.3.255

This configuration tells the router to start at network 172.16.16.0 and use a block size of 4

The range would then be 172.16.16.0 through 172.16.19.255

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.16.0 0.0.7.255

172.16.16.0 going up a block size of 8 to 172.16.23.255

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.32.0 0.0.15.255

172.16.32.0 and goes up a block size of 16 to 172.16.47.255

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.64.0 0.0.63.255

172.16.64.0 and goes up a block size of 64 to 172.16.127.255

Corp(config)#access-list 10 deny 192.168.160.0 0.0.31.255

192.168.160.0 and goes up a block size of 32 to 192.168.191.255

Router(config)#access-list 1 deny 172.16.128.0 0.0.31.255

--- /19 is a 32 block means 144 is in 128-160.0

Router(config)#access-list 1 deny 172.16.48.0 0.0.15.255

--- /20 is a 16 block means 50 is in 48-60.0

Router(config)#access-list 1 deny 172.16.192.0 0.0.63.255

---/18 is a 64 block means 198 is in 192-254.0

Router(config)#access-list 1 deny 172.16.88.0 0.0.7.255

---/21 is an 8 block means 92 is in 88-106.0

Router(config)#access-list 1 permit any

Router(config)#interface serial 0

Router(config-if)#ip access-group 1 out

It turns out the rules could have been done this with one line:

Router(config)#access-list 1 deny 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255

The value of 0.0.0/255.255.255 can be specified as any.

Need: a standard access list that permits only the host or hosts you want to be able to telnet into the routers, then apply the access list to the VTY line with the access-class in command.

Lab_A(config)#access-list 50 permit host 172.16.10.3

Lab_A(config)#line vty 0 4

Lab_A(config-line)#access-class 50 in <--- use "-class" when configuring lines instead of "-group"

Users on the Sales LAN (172.16.40.0/24 - Fa0/0) should not have access to the Finance LAN (172.16.50.0/24 Fa0/1), but they should be able to access the Internet and the marketing department files. The Marketing LAN needs to access the Finance LAN for application services.

Lab_A(config)#access-list 10 deny 172.16.40.0 0.0.0.255

Lab_A(config)#access-list 10 permit any

Place it close to the source

If you place it as an incoming access list on Fa0/0, you might as well shut down the interface because all of the Sales LAN devices will be denied access to all networks attached to the router. The best place to apply this access list is on the Fa0/1 interface as an outbound list:

```
Lab_A(config)#int fa0/1
Lab_A(config-if)#ip access-group 10 out
```

Extended ACLs

access-list 165 [deny | permit | remark] [protocol] {sourceIP maskWC} {destIP maskWC} [logical op] [port | tos]
For a single host, use "host" before the IP address and no wildcard mask is required

```
interface Serial 0/0
Access-group 100 in
access-list 100 remark Begin -- Allow BGP IN and OUT
access-list 100 permit tcp host 1.1.1.1 host 2.2.2.2 eq bgp
access-list 100 permit udp any host 2.2.2.2 gt 33000
access-list 100 remark End
access-list 100 deny ip any any log
```

```
interface BRI 0/0
Access-group 100 in
Access-group 100 out
```

```
access-list 100 permit ip any any log
debug IP packet detail XXX (access list number)
```

```
access-list 101 permit tcp any any eq telnet
debug ip packet detail 101
[ IP packet debugging is on (detailed) for access list 101 ]
```

As always, once our access list is created, we must apply it to an interface with the same command used for the IP standard list:

```
Corp(config-if)#ip access-group 110 in
Or this:
Corp(config-if)#ip access-group 110 out
```

Extended ACLs #2

```
Lab_A#config t
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 deny tcp any host 172.16.50.5 eq 21
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 deny tcp any host 172.16.50.5 eq 23
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 permit ip any any
Lab_A(config)#int fa0/1
Lab_A(config-if)#ip access-group 110 out
```

```
Router(config)#access-list 110 deny tcp any 172.16.48.0 0.0.15.255 eq 23
Router(config)#access-list 110 deny tcp any 172.16.192.0 0.0.63.255 eq 23
Router(config)#access-list 110 permit ip any any
Router(config)#interface Ethernet 1
Router(config-if)#ip access-group 110 out
Router(config-if)#interface Ethernet 2
Router(config-if)#ip access-group 110 out
```

Allow HTTP access to the Finance server from source Host B only. All other traffic will be permitted. We need to be able to configure this in only three test statements:

```
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 permit tcp host 192.168.177.2 host 172.22.89.26 eq 80
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 deny tcp any host 172.22.89.26 eq 80
Lab_A(config)#access-list 110 permit ip any any
Lab_A(config)#interface fastethernet 0/1
Lab_A(config-if)#ip access-group 110 out
webserver:
access-list 253 permit tcp 127.16.5.0 0.0.0.255 eq www any <--permit from 172.16.5.* of www to anyone
```

Named Lists - these start with "ip access-"

```
Lab_A(config)#ip access-list standard BlockSales  
Lab_A(config-std-nacl)#deny 172.16.40.0 0.0.0.255  
Lab_A(config-std-nacl)#permit any  
Lab_A(config-std-nacl)#exit  
Lab_A(config)#int fa0/1  
Lab_A(config-if)#ip access-group BlockSales out
```

Adding #comments#

```
R2(config)#access-list 110 remark Permit Bob from Sales Only To Finance  
R2(config)#access-list 110 permit ip host 172.16.40.1 172.16.50.0 0.0.0.255  
R2(config)#access-list 110 deny ip 172.16.40.0 0.0.0.255 172.16.50.0 0.0.0.255  
R2(config)#ip access-list extended No_Telnet  
R2(config-ext-nacl)#remark Deny all of Sales from Telnetting to Marketing  
R2(config-ext-nacl)#deny tcp 172.16.40.0 0.0.0.255 172.16.60.0 0.0.0.255 eq 23  
R2(config-ext-nacl)#permit ip any any
```

Adding a line to the sequence list:

```
Lab_A(config)#do show access-list  
Extended IP access list 110  
 10 deny tcp any host 172.16.30.5 eq ftp  
 20 deny tcp any host 172.16.30.5 eq telnet  
 30 permit ip any any  
 40 permit tcp host 192.168.177.2 host 172.22.89.26 eq www  
 50 deny tcp any host 172.22.89.26 eq www  
Lab_A (config)#ip access-list extended 110  
Lab_A (config-ext-nacl)#21 deny udp any host 172.16.30.5 eq 69
```

show access-list - displays all access lists and parameters. Shows stats on usage. Doesn't show interfaces.

show access-list 110 - Reveals parameters for 110. Doesn't show interfaces.

show ip access-list - Shows only the IP access lists configured on the router.

show ip interface - Displays which interfaces have access lists set on them.

show running-config - Shows the access lists and the specific interfaces that have ACLs applied on them

Remember: You can't have two lists on the same interface, in the same direction- one will overwrite the other. configuration.

This extended ACL is used to permit traffic on the 10.1.1.x network (inside) and to receive ping responses from the outside while it prevents unsolicited pings from people outside, permitting all other traffic.

```
interface Ethernet0/1  
ip address 172.16.1.2 255.255.255.255  
ip access-group 101 in  
access-list 101 deny icmp any 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 echo  
access-list 101 permit ip any 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255
```

Note: Some applications such as network management require pings for a keepalive function. If this is the case, you might want to limit blocking inbound pings or be more granular in permitted/denied IPs.

OSPF - Link State Routing - Dijkstra's algorithm

```
Central1(config)#int loopback 0
Central1(config-if)#ip address 172.31.1.1 255.255.255.255
Central1(config)#router ospf 132
Central1(config-router)#network 10.10.10.1 0.0.0.0 area 0
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.3 area 1 <--this mask is 255 minus mask, per octet (here 252)
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.10.4 0.0.0.3 area 2
Central1(config-router)#passive-interface f0/0 <--- says no neighbors should be discovered on the interface
```

Have a default route for your networks (so they know the way out), propagate to other routers.

```
Central1(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Fa0/0
Central1(config)#router ospf 1
Central1(config-router)#default-information originate
```

Loopback and Router-IDs in OSPF

If you don't configure a loopback interface on a router, the highest active IP address on a router will become that router's RID during bootup if it isn't already specified. A loopback interface will not override the router-id command, and we don't have to reboot the router to make it take effect as the RID.

1. Highest IP on an active interface by default.
2. Highest logical interface IP (loopback) overrides a physical interface.
3. The router-id overrides the interface and loopback interface.

Reload or use "clear ip ospf process" command, to force changes to take effect

IPv6 OSPF Routing - Routing info is also attached to the interface.

```
Central1(config)#int f0/0
Central1(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
The same IPv4 OSPF RID is still there- change the RID under the OSPF process ID in the global config:
Central1(config)#ipv6 router ospf 1
Central1(config-rtr)#router-id 1.1.1.1
Central1(config-rtr)#do clear ip ospf process
```

Designated Router Elections

- By default, all OSPF routers are assigned a DR priority of 1.
- Elections are first won based upon a router's priority level, then highest RID (often the highest IP address)
- Backup designated router (BDR) is the runner-up in the DR election, a standby for the DR
 - receives all routing updates but does not distribute them; steps in if the DR goes down

Suppose we wanted R1 to become the DR and R2 to become the BDR:

```
R1(config)# interface f0/0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 ospf priority 100
R2(config)# interface f0/0
R2(config-if)# ipv6 ospf priority 90
```

Prevent routers from ever becoming a DR or BDR by configuring a priority of zero

```
R2(config)# interface f0/0
R2(config-if)# ipv6 ospf priority 0
```

Choosing the best route - cost=reference_bandwidth /interface_bandwidth

Interface	Default Bandwidth	Formula (Kbps)	OSPF Cost
Serial	1544 Kbps	100,000/1544	64
Ethernet	10,000 Kbps	100,000/10,000	10
Fast Ethernet	100,000 Kbps	100,000/100,000	1

The default ref bandwidth assumes the fastest link in the network runs at 100 Mbps.

Use **auto-cost reference-bandwidth 10000** to accommodate links up to 10 Gbps in speed.

Here are the rules for how a router sets its OSPF interface costs:

- Set the cost explicitly, with **ip ospf cost x interface**, to a value between 1-65,535
- To affect all routes on the device, use **distance 80**. This also affects the AD of non-OSPF routes.
- Change interface bandwidth with the **bandwidth speed** command, with speed in Kbps
- Change the reference bandwidth, using subcommand **auto-cost reference-bandwidth ref-bw**, in Mbps

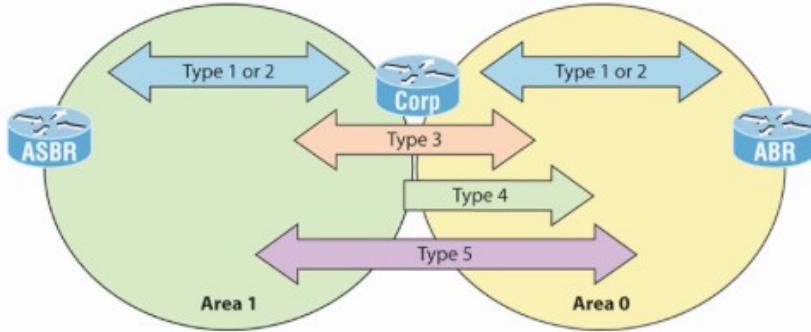
Instead of copying routes into the routing table from the LSDB, a router must do the SPF math, choose the best route, and add the route with a subnet number/mask, an outgoing interface, and a next-hop router IP address.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Left: } R1-R7-R8 & \quad 10 + 180 + 10 = 200 \\ \text{Middle: } R1-R5-R6-R8 & \quad 20 + 30 + 40 + 10 = 100 \\ \text{Right: } R1-R2-R3-R4-R8 & \quad 30 + 60 + 20 + 5 + 10 = 125 \end{aligned}$$

De facto load balancing occurs when metrics tie for multiple routes to the same subnet, the router can put multiple routes in the routing table (the default is four max- use **maximum-paths** subcommand to change).

Link-State Advertisements - Basic LSAs

Type 1 LSA - Router LSA - The common routers describe themselves amongst themselves
Type 2 - Network LSAs - The DR describes itself and its network to its area routers
Type 3 LSA - Summary LSAs - Area Border Routers brag to other areas about their contents
Type 4 LSAs - Area Border Routers give directions to the ASBR
Type 5 LSAs - Autonomous System LSAs - AS external link advertisements



Timers have to match for neighborship

- Flood changed LSAs to neighbors
- and re-flood unchanged LSAs when their lifetime expires (default 30 min)
- Maintain neighborship with Hello msgs, listening for Hellos before the dead/hold interval expires.
 - **the dead/hold timer is 4x the hello interval**
 - **10-sec hello timer and 40-sec hold timer on broadcast and point-to-point links**
 - **30-sec hello timer and 120-sec hold timer for all other network types**

If a router goes down, the LSDB is populated so all of the routers can recalculate their Shortest Paths

Becoming neighbors. When a point-to-point link comes up, the routers on the ends go through interim neighbor states (INIT and 2-Way) exchanging their basic LSAs for discovery, compatibility checks (routerIDs, timers). When both reach 2-Way state, it means they both acknowledge each other as neighbors with matching settings and are prepared to exchange LSDB's. ExStart/Exchange states are when they share DB descriptors, Loading means sending each other Link-State Updates, and Full means their LSDB's match with the same LSA info. These LSA structures comprise the topology. Down means no Hellos are received yet; and Attempt is when NBMA needs manual config.

LSAs in a Multi-Area Design

Migrating from a single-area design to a multi-area design has a couple of effects on LSAs:

- Each area has a smaller number of router and network LSAs.
- ABRs have a copy of the LSDB for each area they connect to and submit a router LSA in each area's LSDB.
- Each area has a need for summary (Type 3) LSAs to describe subnets in other areas.

OSPF: General Verification and Troubleshooting Commands

sh int [brief] x0/0 - up/down, IP address, encapsulation, keepalive, and loopback status

show ip ospf interface (brief) - address, area, process, router ID, cost, state, priority, timers, DR and BDR

sh ip ospf - router ID, area information, SPF statistics, and LSA timer information

show ip route ospf - shows the routing table, and displays any injected routes

show ip ospf neighbor (detail) - neighbor table, related interfaces, hold time, queue, seq number, DR and BDR

show ip ospf database - view topology table - output per LSA, organized by type, neighbor RIDs, etc

show ip ospf topology (or topology-info) - displays topology table

show ip ospf traffic - shows the # and type of traffic received

show ip protocols - shows the routing process ID and which protocols are enabled, K values

show key-chain - display authentication info

show ip ospf border-routers

show ip ospf data -- lots more on links

- Type 1, or Router LSA, is created and advertised by every router.
- Each internal router has one Router LSA, while each ABR has multiple Router LSAs, one for each area.
- Router LSAs are flooded throughout its (intended) area by sending a copy to all connected neighbors.

Each one includes: all neighbors directly connected, the router interface address the LSA was sent

Basic LSA Layout (This can vary but is a basic look)

20-byte LSA Header					
0 [4 bits]	V = on if virtual link	E = on if ASBR	B = on if ABR	0 [9 bits]	Number of Links: count of all router links [16 bits]
Link state identifier ID [32 bits]					
Link Data [32 bits]					
Type [8 bits]	Number TOS = 0		Metric		
Starting from Link ID again...					

An overview of Link State Advertisement Types

LSA Type	Description	Routing Table Code
1	Router LSA. Advertises intra-area routes. Generated by each OSPF router to ID itself to peers. Flooded only within the area. Represents stub networks as well	O
2	Network LSA. Generated by a DR, advertises routers on a multiaccess link.. Flooded only within the area. Represents the subnet and the router interfaces connected to the subnet. One per transit network.	O
3	Network Summary LSA. Advertises interarea routes. Generated by an ABR, flooded to adjacent areas. Defines the links (subnets) in the origin area, and cost, but no topology data. "I am the ABR and these are my area's subnets"	O IA
4	ASBR Summary LSA. Advertises the route to reach an ASBR. Generated and advertised by ABR. Flooded to adjacent areas.	O IA
5	AS External LSA. Advertises external routes (in another routing domain) Generated by an ASBR and flooded to adjacent areas. E1-metric increases at each router as it is passed through the network. E2-metric does not increase (this is the default).	O
6	Multicast LSA. Used in multicast OSPF (MOSPF) operations, not supported by Cisco IOS.	
7	Not-so-stubby area (NSSA) LSA. Advertises routes in another routing domain. Generated by an ASBR, advertised within a NSSA (instead of a type-5 LSA) Totally NSSA bends this rule- that's why it accepts Type 4 LSA. N1-metric increases as it is passed through the network. N2-metric does not increase (default).	O
8	External Attributes LSA, aka Link LSA. For OSPF and BGP interaction. Not implemented in Cisco. Another definition at Cisco says this is an IPv6 tool: "IPv6 local-link flooding scope (never flooded beyond), provide the link-local address to all other routers attached to the link, also gives a list of IPv6 prefixes to associate with the link. Allows the router to assert a collection of Options bits to associate with the network LSA that will be originated for the link"	
9	Intra-Area-Prefix LSAs - A router can originate multiple intra-area-prefix LSAs for each router or transit network, each with a unique link-state ID. The link-state ID for each intra-area-prefix LSA describes its association to either the router LSA or the network LSA and contains prefixes for stub and transit networks.	
8,10,11	Opaque LSAs. Used for specific applications, these are generic LSAs to allow for easy future extension of OSPF; for example, type 10 has been adapted for MPLS traffic, BGP, IPv6 stuff. Others more vendor-specific- are becoming more defined.	

Each area type affects the OSPF routing table of each Edge Router dramatically.

Area 6 Stub Area

Kills all External Routes (type 5)
Creates a default route



- LSA type 3: Summary (ia routes)
- LSA type 5: External Routes (e1 or e2)
- LSA type 7: NSSA route (n1 or n2)



BGP is advertising multiple /24 loopbacks
via S1 is redistributing into OSPF.

Area 8 NSSA

(not so stubby area)

Kills all External Routes(*) (type 5)
No default route
Creates own area type 7 LSA



Area 7 Totally Stubby Area

Kills all External Routes (type 5)
Kills all inter-area Routes (type 3)
Creates a default route



OSPF Back Bone

Area 9

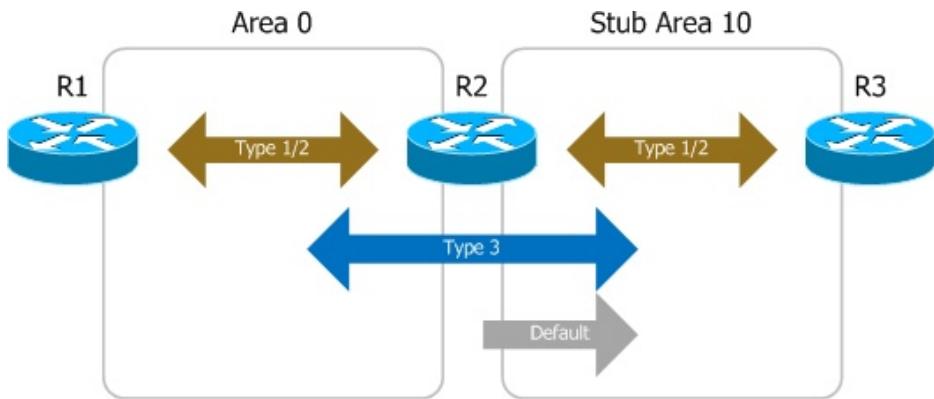
Standard Area

All Routes Present!

(*) advertises area 8 ASBR redistributed external routes
as LSA type 7 in area 8 itself. When traversing to a different
OSPF area, it transforms them to a regular type 5 LSA.



Stub Areas



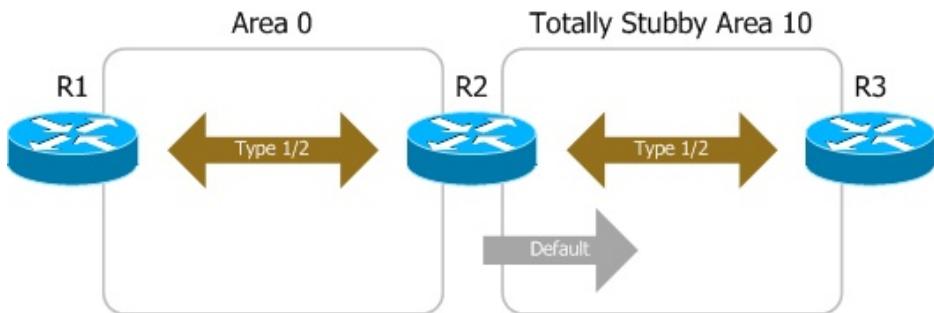
In this next example, R2 and R3 share a common stub area. Instead of propagating external routes (type 5 LSAs) into the area, the ABR injects a type 3 LSA containing a default route into the stub area. This ensures that routers in the stub area will be able to route traffic to external destinations without having to maintain all of the individual external routes. Because external routes are not received by the stub area, ABRs also do not forward type 4 LSAs from other areas into the stub.

For an area to become a stub, all routers belonging to it must be configured to operate as such. Stub routers and non-stub routers will not form adjacencies.

```
Router(config-router)# area 10 stub
```

This idea of substituting a single default route for many specific routes can be applied to internal routes as well, which is the case of *totally stubby areas*.

Totally Stubby Areas



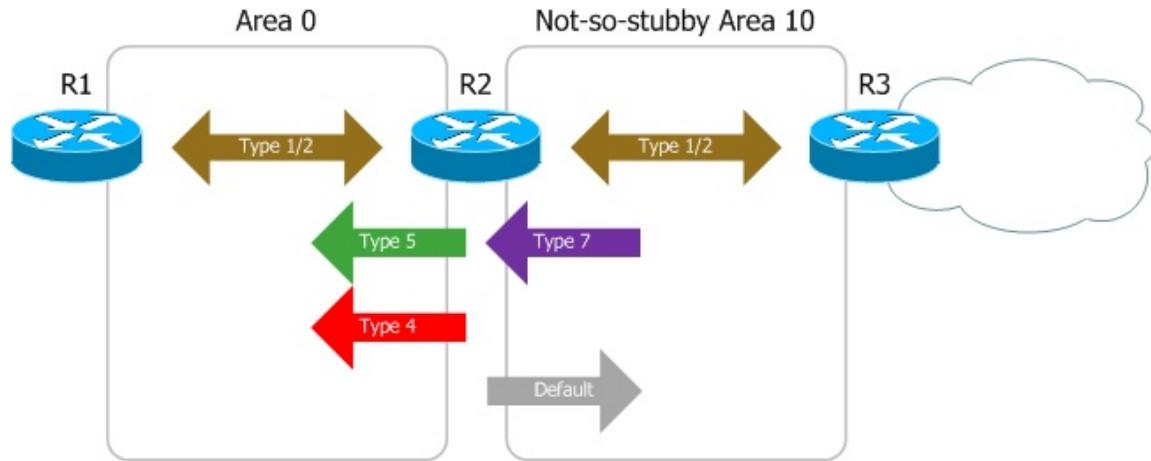
Like stub areas, totally stubby areas do not receive type 4 or 5 LSAs from their ABRs. However, they also do not receive type 3 LSAs; all routing out of the area relies on the single default route injected by the ABR.

A stub area is extended to a totally stubby area by configuring all of its ABRs with the `no-summary` parameter:

```
Router(config-router)# area 10 stub no-summary
```

Stub and totally stubby areas can certainly be convenient to reduce the resource utilization of routers in portions of the network not requiring full routing knowledge. However, neither type can contain an ASBR, as type 4 and 5 LSAs are not permitted inside the area. To solve this problem, and in what is arguably the worst naming decision ever made, Cisco introduced the concept of a *not-so-stubby area* (NSSA).

Not-so-stubby Areas



An NSSA makes use of type 7 LSAs, which are essentially type 5 LSAs in disguise. This allows an ASBR to advertise external links to an ABR, which converts the type 7 LSAs into type 5 before flooding them to the rest of the OSPF domain.

An NSSA can function as either a stub or totally stubby area. To designate a normal (stub) NSSA, all routers in the area must be so configured:

```
Router(config-router)# area 10 nssa
```

Type 3 LSAs will pass into and out of the area. Unlike a normal stub area, the ABR will *not* inject a default route into an NSSA unless explicitly configured to do so. As traffic cannot be routed to external destinations without a default route, you'll probably want to include one by appending `default-information-originate` (thanks to Adam for pointing this out).

```
Router(config-router)# area 10 nssa default-information-originate
```

To expand an NSSA to function as a totally stubby area, eliminating type 3 LSAs, all of its ABRs must be configured with the `no-summary` parameter:

```
Router(config-router)# area 10 nssa no-summary
```

The ABR of a totally stubby NSSA (or not-so-totally-stubby area, if you prefer) injects a default route without any further configuration.

Summary

- **Standard areas** can contain LSAs of type 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, and may contain an ASBR. The backbone is considered a standard area.
- **Stub areas** can contain type 1, 2, and 3 LSAs. A default route is substituted for external routes.
- **Totally stubby areas** can only contain type 1 and 2 LSAs, and a single type 3 LSA. The type 3 LSA describes a default route, substituted for all external and inter-area routes.
- **Not-so-stubby areas** implement stub or totally stubby functionality yet contain an ASBR. Type 7 LSAs generated by the ASBR are converted to type 5 by ABRs to be flooded to the rest of the OSPF domain.

EIGRP - Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol

- A "balanced hybrid" routing protocol, instead of link-state/ distance vector. Sometimes "adv distance vector"
- Sends routing table once, and uses partial updates for changes
- Updates to multicast 224.0.0.10; and the unicast IP of the neighbor if specific.
- Reliable Transport Protocol (RTP) to send updates - resend any EIGRP messages that are not received
- For route poisoning (communicating that a route has "failed" to either warn or stop traffic over the route); EIGRP uses $2^{32}-1$ as "infinity" (just over 4 billion), some new IOS versions raise that value to $2^{56}-1$ (over 10,000 trillion)

EIGRP default timers are 5 and 15 seconds for Hello and Hold Intervals (Hold is default 3x Hello interval) Not required, but they should be the same for stability. (if Hold time expires it's a sign the other router is down)

For Neighborship: same configured autonomous system number (ASN), the source IP in the neighbor's Hello must be from the same subnet as the interface, matching K values, and pass authentication process if needed.

3-steps when a router first joins a network, 3 tables to populate

- Neighbor discovery: Hello messages discover potential neighboring EIGRP routers to add to neighbor table.
- Topology exchange: Exchange full topology update, only partial updates later as needed on changes
- Routing table: Analyzes topology tables, choose lowest-metric route to each subnet.

Reported Distance (RD) and Feasible Distance (FD), Routing and Topology Tables

- Reported/advertised distance (RD) is how far a neighbor says it is from a remote network.
- Feasible distance (FD) is calculated by taking that and adding how far away that neighbor is.
- The route with the lowest FD is the route that you'll find in the routing table - it's considered the best path.

D 10.0.0.0/8 [90/2195456] via 172.16.10.2, 00:27:06, Serial0/0

D (for DUAL) says this an EIGRP injected route. Get to the 10.0.0.0 network via its neighbor 172.16.10.2.

The first number (90) is the administrative distance (AD) of the routing protocol, the second number is the feasible distance (FD)- the entire cost for this router to get to network 10.0.0.0/8 through that neighbor, 2195456

- The neighbor router has a reported (advertised) distance (RD) between it and network 10.0.0.0
- Feasible Distance (FD), or total cost to that network adds RD to the calculated distance to that router.

Successor Routes and Feasible Successors

Each router keeps information about adjacent neighbors in the neighbor table and the topology tables hold all destinations advertised by the neighbors, with associated distances and other metrics. That best path is called a successor route, and it is determined by which path has the lowest Feasible Distance.

Also elected is a backup "feasible successor" route, which is kept in the topology table if they are needed. If a nonsuccessor route's RD is less than the FD of the successor, the route is a feasible successor route.

Router E has 3 routers/ paths to choose to get to Router A/ Subnet 1:

Router E Topology Table:		Router E Routing Table
Next Hop	FD	RD
Router B - 19,000		15,000
Router C - 17,500		13,000 <- RD makes it FS
Router D - 14,000		10,000 <- FD makes it SR

Rule is, the lowest FD will determine the Successor Route, and Router D wins with a FD of 14,000. You might think that the next smaller FD would be the runner up, right? Absolutely not. In the case of a Feasible Successor, we look at the Successor Route's FD and find a Reported Distance that is smaller than *that*. Router C wins out as Feasible Successor by the rule because it's RD 13,000 < FD of the current Successor at 14,000.

Verifying EIGRP - The Configuration and the Neighbor, Topology and Routing Tables

show ip eigrp interfaces	show ip eigrp topology
show ip eigrp interfaces detail	show ip eigrp topology <i>subnet/prefix</i>
show ip eigrp interfaces type <i>number</i>	show ip route
show ip protocols	show ip route eigrp
show ip eigrp neighbors	show ip route <i>subnet mask</i>
show ip eigrp neighbors type <i>number</i>	show ip route section <i>subnet</i>

EIGRP Metric Calculations

$$\text{Metric} = \left(\left(\frac{10^7}{\text{least-bandwidth}} \right) + \text{cumulative-delay} \right) * 256$$

In this formula, the term least-bandwidth represents the lowest-bandwidth link in the route, using a unit of Kbps. For instance, if the slowest link in a route is a 10Mbps Ethernet link, the first part of the formula is $10^7 / 10^4$, which equals 1000. You use 10^4 in the formula because 10Mbps is equal to 10,000 Kbps (10^4 Kbps).

Cumulative-delay is the sum of delay values for all outgoing interfaces in the route, *in tens of microseconds* (μsec) (most **show** commands, including **show ip eigrp topology** and **show interfaces**, list delay in microseconds)

You can set both bandwidth and delay for each link with **bandwidth** and **delay** interface commands.

A Simple Example

R1 learns about subnet 10.1.3.0/24 from R2's update listing min. BW of 100,000 Kbps, and delay of 100 μsec.

R1's S0/1 has an interface bandwidth set to 1544 Kbps and a delay of 20,000 μsec

- 1.544 Mbps < 100,000 Kbps, or 100 Mbps. R1 needs to use this slower bandwidth in the metric calculation, (data's being squeezed down a smaller pipe)

- For interface delay, the router always adds its interface delay to the delay listed in the EIGRP Update.

- The update lists 100 microseconds (10 tens of microseconds).

Add R1's S0/1 is 2000 tens of = 2010 tens of μsec.

Metric = $\left[\left(\frac{10^7}{1544} \right) + (10 + 2000) \right] * 256 = 2,172,416$

- Later this is revisited, for Reported Distance that R1 was given. It turns out we have the info already:

Metric = $\left[\left(\frac{10^7}{100,000} \right) + (10) \right] * 256 = 28,160$ - So FD for R1 calc'd at 2,172,416; and the RD from R2: 28160

- On R1, it listed in the **sh ip route** like this with the AD/FD:

D 10.1.3.0/24 [90/2172416] via ????.???.??., 23:58:00, S0/1 [no IP address for R2's Serial port (oops)]

sh ip eigrp topology might have something like this, which shows the FD/RD

P 10.1.3.0/24, 1 successors, FD is 2172416 via ?.?.?.? (2172416/28160), Serial0/1

The Entire Equation

$\text{Metric} = \{K1 \times \text{Bandwidth} + [(K2 \times \text{Bandwidth}) / (256 - \text{Load})] + K3 \times \text{Delay}\} \times [K5 / (\text{Reliability} + K4)]$

K1 Bandwidth (Be) = lowest bandwidth of the links along the path - $[10000000 / \text{Kbps}] \times 256$

K2 Load (utilization on path)

K3 Delay (Dc) = sum of all the delays of the links along the path - [in 10s of μsec] $\times 256$

K4 Reliability (r)

K5 MTU

- K values are only multiples of the metric calculation. Default values are: K1=1, K2=0, K3=1, K4=0, K5=0.

- K1 and K3 are static. K2, K4, and K5 are variable, and we just get overhead calculating them and reporting them if they are on. MTU is exchanged between EIGRP neighbors but not used. By default only K1 and K3 are enabled and we don't use K2 or K4. (only bandwidth and delay are used in the formula)

Serial Links and a Special Problem

Serial links default to a bandwidth of 1544 and a delay of 20,000 microseconds. A slow 64 Kbps serial link's **bandwidth** command is used to reflect the correct speed (instead of the default 1544)

EIGRP Configuration Commands

router eigrp as-number

network ip-address [wildcard-mask] (address should match an int, and often wildcards are unavoidable*)

eigrp router-id value

ip hello-interval eigrp asn time

[for interfaces: **ip hold-time eigrp asn time**]

[for interfaces: **bandwidth value**]

[for interfaces: **delay value**]

maximum-paths number

variance multiplier to tweak k-values

auto-summary

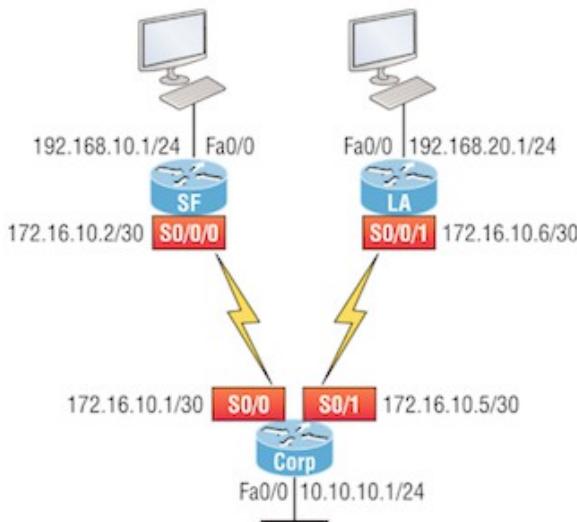
Failed Routes, DUAL Query and Reply to Update Routing Table

When a route fails, and there's no feasible successor, EIGRP uses Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL) to choose a replacement. DUAL sends queries looking for a loop-free route, and when it's found, DUAL adds it to the routing table.

Messages just confirm that a route exists, and would not create a loop. In most networks, convergence can still occur in less than 10 seconds.

Basic IGP Routing in IPv4

The three types of routing are static (in which routes are manually configured at the CLI), dynamic (in which the routers share routing information via a routing protocol), and default routing (in which a special route is configured for all traffic without a more specific destination network found in the table)



Basic layout to setup

Central1 - in diagram is CORP

Serial 0/0: 172.16.10.1/30

Serial 0/1: 172.16.10.5/30

Fa0/0: 10.10.10.1/24

DFW - in diagram is SF

S0/0/0: 172.16.10.2/30

Fa0/0: 192.168.10.1/24

HOU - in diagram is LA

S0/0/0: 172.16.10.6/30

Fa0/0: 192.168.20.1/24

Basic Local IPv4 Routing (Direct Connections)

Every interface below should have "no shutdown" added. It has been removed here for brevity

Router(config)#hostname Central1

Central1(config)#int f0/0

Central1(config-if)#desc Connection to LAN

Central1(config-if)#ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.0

Central1(config-if)#int s0/0

Central1(config-if)#desc WAN connection to DFW

Central1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.10.1 255.255.255.252

Central1(config-if)#int s0/1

Central1(config-if)#desc WAN connection to HOU

Central1(config-if)#ip address 172.16.10.5 255.255.255.252

Central1>sh controllers s0/0

Interface Serial0/0

Hardware is PowerQUICC MPC860

DTE V.35 TX and RX clocks detected.

Remember to set clock rates on the DCEs!

Router(config)#hostname DFW

DFW(config)#int s0/0/0

DFW(config-if)#desc WAN Connection to Central1

DFW(config-if)#ip address 172.16.10.2 255.255.255.252

DFW(config-if)#clock rate 1000000 - DFW's DCE to Central1's DTE -we need a clock rate!

DFW(config-if)#int f0/0

DFW(config-if)#desc DFW LAN

DFW(config-if)#ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0

Router(config)#hostname HOU

HOU(config)#int s0/0/1

HOU(config-if)#ip address 172.16.10.6 255.255.255.252

HOU(config-if)#clock rate 1000000 - HOU's DCE to Central1's DTE -we need a clock rate

HOU(config-if)#description WAN To Central1

HOU(config-if)#int f0/0

HOU(config-if)#ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0

HOU(config-if)#description HOU LAN

Static Routing: Manually Adding to Routing Table

Router(config)#ip route 172.16.3.0 255.255.255.0 192.168.2.4

172.16.3.0 is the remote network, and 255.255.255.0 is its mask of the remote network.

192.168.2.4 is the next hop that packets will be sent to. Can also be the interface out to it.

Below, the 150 is where the administrative distance goes if you want to override the default. This is set here because in the next example, we will add routes with RIP, and using 150 (rather than the default of 1) means we won't have to remove static routes first- RIP (120) will just override them.

Administrative Distances (the smaller # wins out):

Connected	0	OSPF	110
Static route	1	RIP	120
EIGRP summary	5	iBGP	200
eBGP	20	Unknown	255
EIGRP	90		

```
Central1(config)#ip route 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.2 150 --use the dest IP out
Central1(config)#ip route 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0 s0/1 150 -- use an interface out
```

```
DFW(config)#ip route 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.1 150
DFW(config)#ip route 172.16.10.4 255.255.255.252 172.16.10.1 150
DFW(config)#ip route 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.1 150
```

```
HOU#config t
HOU(config)#ip route 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.5 150
HOU(config)#ip route 172.16.10.0 255.255.255.252 172.16.10.5 150
HOU(config)#ip route 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.5 150
```

A stub indicates that the networks in this design have only one way out to reach all other networks; use only a default route. Here's an alt config instead of typing in the static routes. to make this a "stubby network" (first we turn off the routes we just configured):

```
HOU(config)#no ip route 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.5 150
HOU(config)#no ip route 172.16.10.0 255.255.255.252 172.16.10.5 150
HOU(config)#no ip route 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.10.5 150
HOU(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.16.10.5
```

Convert from Static IPv4 to Dynamic IPv4 RIPv2

As a shortcut, you can verify directly connected networks to know what to configure RIP with:

Central1#sh ip int brief

Interface	IP-Address	OK?	Method	Status	Protocol
FastEthernet0/0	10.10.10.1	YES	manual	up	up
Serial0/0	172.16.10.1	YES	manual	up	up
FastEthernet0/1	unassigned	YES	unset	admin. down	down
Serial0/1	172.16.10.5	YES	manual	up	up

When we declare our routes in RIP, we need to refer to them in a classful way instead of by the specific subnet. This is illustrated below. RIP then finds the subnets and fills in the routing table (RIP is NOT a classful routing protocol btw).

```
Central1(config)#router rip
Central1(config-router)#network 10.0.0.0
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
Central1(config-router)#version 2
Central1(config-router)#no auto-summary
```

Add the default static route, and enter RIP config to set default-information originate to propagate it.

```
Central1(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Fa0/0
Central1(config)#router rip
Central1(config-router)#default-information originate
```

```
DFW(config)#router rip
DFW(config-router)#network 192.168.10.0
DFW(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
DFW(config-router)#version 2
DFW(config-router)#no auto-summary ---disabling auto-summary makes RIP look at our subnets
DFW(config-router)#do show ip route
```

```

C 192.168.10.0/24 is directly connected, FastEthernet0/0
L 192.168.10.1/32 is directly connected, FastEthernet0/0
  172.16.0.0/30 is subnetted, 3 subnets
R    172.16.10.4 [120/1] via 172.16.10.1, 00:00:08, Serial0/0/0
C    172.16.10.0 is directly connected, Serial0/0/0
L    172.16.10.2/32 is directly connected, Serial0/0/0
S 192.168.20.0/24 [150/0] via 172.16.10.1
  10.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
R    10.10.10.0 [120/1] via 172.16.10.1, 00:00:08, Serial0/0/0

```

- Note above the administrative distances set for RIP (R) and our previous static routes (S)

```

HOU(config)#no ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0      --- get rid of that temporary default route we set for HOU
HOU(config)#router rip
HOU(config-router)#network 192.168.20.0
HOU(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
HOU(config-router)#no auto
HOU(config-router)#vers 2

```

Switch from IPv4 RIP to Dynamic IPv4 OSPF

```

Central1(config)#no router rip
Central1(config)#router ospf 132
Central1(config-router)#network 10.10.10.1 0.0.0.255 area 0
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.10.1 0.0.0.3 area 0
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.10.5 0.0.0.3 area 0

```

```

DFW(config)#no router rip
DFW(config)#router ospf 300
DFW(config-router)#network 192.168.10.1 0.0.0.255 area 0
DFW(config-router)#network 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.7 area 0

```

[may need "area 1 range" for this, since it's a summary of two listed on Central1- see below]

```

HOU(config)#router ospf 100
HOU(config-router)#network 192.168.20.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
HOU(config-router)#network 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.7 area 0

```

Adding a non-OSPF network? Use passive-interface:

```

HOU(config)#router ospf 100
HOU(config-router)#passive-interface fastEthernet 0/1

```

Add a SanAnt router:

```

Router(config)#hostname SanAnt
SanAnt(config)#int f0/0
SanAnt(config-if)#ip address 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.0
SanAnt(config-if)#no shut
SanAnt(config-if)#router ospf 2
SanAnt(config-router)#network 10.10.10.0 0.0.255.255 area 0

```

OSPF Route summarization:

```

Router(config)#router ospf 100
Interarea: area 1 range 192.168.5.8 0.0.0.63
External: summary-address: 192.168.64.0 0.0.224.0

```

RouterID - So what if you didn't put in a loopback first and need to force a router to become DR?

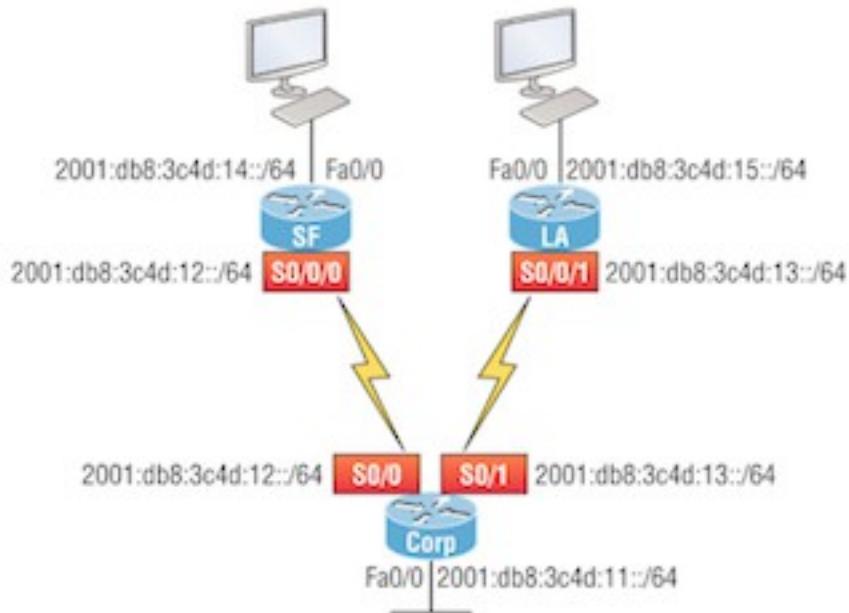
```

Corp(config-router)#router-id 223.255.255.254
Corp(config-router)#do clear ip ospf process

```

[Just set a routerID which will beat any other RID or loopback set on other routers, then reset OSPF]

Basic IGP Routing in IPv6



Adding IPv6 (including local default routing)

Add IPv6 to the Central1, DFW, and HOU routers by using a simple subnet scheme of 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15

Central1#config t

Central1(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing

Central1(config)#int f0/0

Central1(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:11::/64 eui-64

Central1(config-if)#int s0/0

Central1(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:12::/64 eui-64

Central1(config-if)#int s0/1

Central1(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:13::/64 eui-64

DFW(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing

DFW(config)#int s0/0/0

DFW(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:12::/64 eui-64

DFW(config-if)#int fa0/0

DFW(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:14::/64 eui-64

HOU(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing

HOU(config)#int s0/0/1

HOU(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:13::/64 eui-64

HOU(config-if)#int f0/0

HOU(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:3c4d:15::/64 eui-64

Static IPv6 Routing

First static route line uses the next-hop address, and the exit interface on the second entry

(On the DFW router, use show ipv6 int brief, and then copy the interface address used for the next hop)

Central1(config)#ipv6 route 2001:db8:3c4d:14::/64 2001:DB8:3C4D:12:21A:2FFF:FEE7:4398 150

Central1(config)#ipv6 route 2001:DB8:3C4D:15::/64 s0/0/1 150

Central1(config)#do sho ipv6 route static

S 2001:DB8:3C4D:14::/64 [150/0]

via 2001:DB8:3C4D:12:21A:2FFF:FEE7:4398

For DFW and HOU routers put a single entry in each router to get to remote subnet 11 (Central1):

DFW(config)#ipv6 route 2001:db8:3c4d:11::/64 s0/0/0 150

HOU(config)#ipv6 route ::/0 s0/0/1 -- a default route

IPv6 RIPng (a different pair of routers for this one)

```
Austin(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
Austin(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:2::/64 eui-64
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
Austin(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/1
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:1::/64 eui-64
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
Austin(config-if)#no shutdown
```

```
Houston(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
Houston(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:2::/64 eui-64
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
Houston(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/1
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:3::/64 eui-64
Houston(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
```

Switch to IPv6 OSPF Routing

```
Central1(config)#int f0/0
Central1(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
Central1(config-if)#int s0/0
Central1(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
Central1(config-if)#int s0/1
Central1(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
```

```
DFW(config)#int f0/0
DFW(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
DFW(config-if)#int s0/0/0
DFW(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
[Same for others]
```

```
SanAnt(config)#int f0/0
SanAnt(config-if)#ipv6 address autoconfig default
SanAnt(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
```

The same IPv4 OSPF RID is still there- change the RID under the OSPF process ID in the global config:

```
Central1(config)#ipv6 router ospf 1
Central1(config-rtr)#router-id 1.1.1.1
Central1(config-rtr)#do clear ip ospf process
```

Switching from IPv6 OSPF to IPv6 EIGRP

(you have to turn off OSPF on the interfaces, then add)

```
Central1(config)#int f0/0
Central1(config-if)#no ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
Central1(config-if)# ipv6 eigrp 1
Central1(config-if)#exit
[Do for all interfaces]
DFW(config)#int f0/0
DFW(config-if)#no ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
DFW(config-if)# ipv6 eigrp 1
DFW(config-if)#exit
DFW(config-if)#int s0/0/0
[Same for others]
```

Dynamic IGP Routing Protocols - Quick Overview

RIP for IPv4

```
Central1(config)#router rip
Central1(config-router)#network 10.0.0.0
Central1(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
Central1(config-router)#version 2
Central1(config-router)#no auto-summary
Add the default as a static route, and enter RIP config to set default-information originate to propagate it.
Central1(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Fa0/0
Central1(config)#router rip
Central1(config-router)#default-information originate
```

RIPng for IPv6 - add to interfaces

```
Austin(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
Austin(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:2::/64 eui-64
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
Austin(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/1
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 enable
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:db8:c18:1::/64 eui-64
Austin(config-if)#ipv6 rip RIPNG1 enable
Austin(config-if)#no shutdown
```

OSPF for IPv4

```
int loopback 0
ip address 172.31.1.1 255.255.255.255
router ospf 300
Test(config-router)#network 192.168.10.64 0.0.0.15 area 0
Test(config-router)#network 192.168.10.80 0.0.0.15 area 0
```

OSPFv3 for IPv6 - add to interfaces

```
Corp(config)#ipv6 router ospf 1
Corp(config)#ipv6 router-id 1.1.1.1
Corp(config)#int f0/0
Corp(config-if)#ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
```

EIGRP for IPv4

```
Corp#config t
Corp(config)#router eigrp 20
Corp(config-router)#network 10.10.11.0 0.0.0.255
Corp(config-router)#network 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.3
Corp(config-router)#network 172.16.10.4 0.0.0.3
Corp(config-router)#no auto-summary
```

```
SF(config)#router eigrp 20
SF(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0
SF(config-router)#network 10.0.0.0
SF(config-router)#no auto-summary
```

EIGRPv6 for IPv6 - add to interfaces

```
Corp(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
Corp(config)#ipv6 router eigrp 10
Corp(config-rtr)#no shut
Corp(config-rtr)#router-id 1.1.1.1
Corp(config-rtr)#int s0/0/0
Corp(config-if)#ipv6 eigrp 10
Corp(config-if)#int s0/0/1
Corp(config-if)#ipv6 eigrp 10
```

Bigger Picture: Routing Table Manager; Timers

Administrative Distance- Lowest score wins

How the device's *Routing Table Manager (RTM)* chooses from multiple active routing protocols available to get to the same subnet advertised on one of them. Got a router with a few turned on? Lower AD is chosen.

To understand this, a directly connected device has an AD of 0 (as it should)

Static route	1	IS-IS	115
EIGRP summary	5	RIP	120
external BGP	20	external EIGRP	170
Internal EIGRP	90	internal BGP	200
OSPF	110	Unknown*	255

Timers - How to choose a good protocol in your designs:

These are the defaults. Refer to documentation to how to change them, like "ip hello-interval eigrp" or "ip hold-time eigrp"

Protocol	Type	Hello/Keepalive	Hold/Dead	Notes
<i>Interior Routing Protocols</i>				
RIP	DV	Update 30 sec	90 sec	Timeout 180 sec; Flush 120 sec
OSPF	LS	BC+PtP 10 sec	BC+PtP 40 sec (4x hello)	For NBMA 30 sec hello/ 120 sec dead (4x)
EIGRP	AdDV	BC+PtP 5 sec	BC+PtP 15 sec (3x hello)	For NBMA 60 sec hello/ 180 sec dead (3x)
<i>Exterior Routing Protocols</i>				
IS-IS	LS	10 sec Juniper 9 sec?	30 sec (3x hello) Juniper 27 sec?	Also has L1 and L2 timers. PtP vs NBMA. Differ in Juniper. See documentation.
(IS-IS has several timers and issues that are outside the scope of this table)				
BGP	PathV	60 sec keepalive	180 sec (3x keepalive)	(BGP also has iBGP and eBGP with timers outside the scope of this table)

OSPF Path Cost in Routing - Don't get confused with Spanning Tree Cost in Switching!

Choosing the best route - cost=reference_bandwidth /interface_bandwidth

Interface	Default Bandwidth	Formula (Kbps)	OSPF Cost
Serial	1544 Kbps	100,000/1544	64
Ethernet	10,000 Kbps	100,000/10,000	10
Fast Ethernet	100,000 Kbps	100,000/100,000	1

The default ref bandwidth assumes the fastest link in the network runs at 100 Mbps.

Use **auto-cost reference-bandwidth 10000** to accommodate links up to 10 Gbps in speed.

Here are the rules for how a router sets its OSPF interface costs:

- Set the cost explicitly, with **ip ospf cost x interface**, to a value between 1-65,535
- To affect all routes on the device, use **distance 80**. This also affects the AD of non-OSPF routes.
- Change interface bandwidth with the **bandwidth speed** command, with speed in Kbps
- Change the reference bandwidth, using subcommand **auto-cost reference-bandwidth ref-bw**, in Mbps

STP Path Cost:

10 Mbps	100	2000000
100 Mbps	19	200000
1 Gbps	4	20000
10 Gbps	2	2000
100 Gbps		200

Distance vector routing:

Split Horizon is just not advertising the route back from where it was learned from. Poison reverse labels "where it came from" an unreachable link with "infinite metric" (16 for RIP)

Split-horizon routing with poison reverse is a variant of split-horizon route advertising in which a router actively advertises routes as **unreachable** over the interface over which they were learned by setting the route metric to infinite (16 for RIP). The effect of such an announcement is to immediately remove most looping routes before they can propagate through the network.

The main disadvantage of poison reverse is that it can significantly increase the size of routing announcements in certain fairly common network topologies, but it allows for the improvement of the overall efficiency of the network in case of faults. Split horizon states that if a neighboring router sends a route to a router, the receiving router will not propagate this route back to the advertising router on the same interface.

With route poisoning, when a router detects that one of its connected routes has failed, the router will poison the route by assigning an infinite metric to it and advertising it to neighbors. When a router advertises a poisoned route to its neighbors, its neighbors break the rule of split horizon and send back to the originator the same poisoned route, called a poison reverse. In order to give the router enough time to propagate the poisoned route and to ensure that no routing loops occur while propagation occurs, the routers implement a hold-down mechanism.

BGP4 Overview

- Built for reliability, scalability, and control - not speed.
- Is a **path-vector protocol**. Routing between AS's is called *interdomain routing*
- Uses TCP port 179. BGP peers exchange incremental, triggered route updates and periodic keepalives.
- The administrative distance for eBGP routes is 20, for iBGP routes is 200.
- Routers run only one instance/process of BGP at a time; are called *BGP speakers*; neighbors are *BGP peers*
- Networks not in the local router's routing table will not be sent out in updates
- Routes learned by the BGP process are propagated by default but are often filtered by a routing policy.
- When an update about a network leaves an AS, its ASN is prepended to the list of ASs that have handled that update. Once it receives an update, it examines the AS list. If it finds its own ASN in that list, the update is discarded (loop prevention/built in split-horizon)
- no auto-summary and no synchronization are defaults in BGP

Because BGP uses TCP, it has reliability, error recovery, and flow control.

Before a BGP speaker can peer with neighbor, neighbor must be statically defined; TCP session-capable, IP reachable. You also get the buffering and other TCP benefits (resent segments if timer reaches 0, acknowledgement may be delayed up to a 1 second to determine if any data should be sent, etc.) The underlying TCP session can be shown with 'show tcp brief'.

Autonomous Systems and ASNs

AS is a group of networks under a common administration. IANA ASN range from 0 to 65,535, with 64,512 - 65,534 ASNs to be private (private means can connect to only one other ASN or multiple ASNs that can't cause loop).

ASN range	0	1 - 64,495	64,496 - 64,511	64,512 - 65,534	65,535
Purpose	Reserved	Public ASN	Documentation	Private ASN	Reserved

Public ASNs are assigned and registered by RIPE NCC; private ASNs can be removed in eBGP using the 'neighbor ebgp-neighbor-address remove-private-as' command.

Path Attributes: AS_PATH and routing

- Path attributes (PAs) are factors that allow BGP to select a route over another. By default, no BGP PAs have been set, and BGP uses AS_PATH PA when choosing the best route among many routes.
- When a router advertises a route with AS_PATH, it will list ASNs the path will go through, to help find the shortest path and prevent routing loops.
- Looping is prevented by ignoring route updates that contain the current AS's ASN.

Internal and External BGP

BGP peering used: iBGP if same AS, eBGP if different AS. If the ASN configured in a device's **router bgp** and **neighbor** statements match, BGP initiates an internal session (iBGP); otherwise an external session (eBGP).

When advertising to an iBGP peer, no ASN is added- not needed. To an eBGP peer, its ASN is added.

There are 2 types of routing:

- Hot-potato routing: traffic exits the AS via the closest exit point.
- Cold-potato routing: traffic exits the AS via the path closest to the destination.

BGP Databases

BGP uses three databases:

- BGP DB, or RIB (Routing Information Base): Networks known by BGP, with their paths PAs - **show ip bgp**
- Routing table: Paths to each network used by the router, and the next hop for each - **show ip route**
- Neighbor database: All configured BGP neighbors. **show ip bgp summary**

BGP States and Message Types

The BGP process has different states, managed by a Finite State Machine (FSM). The messages don't have specific names like LSA's do in OSPF, just typical hello, update, etc.

1. Router tries to establish TCP connection with IP address configured in 'neighbor' command at port 179
2. After 3-way handshake, first BGP message sent (Open), with parameters to establish neighborship.
3. If a match, neighborship formed (Established), update messages sent (list of PAs and prefixes)

State	Meaning
Idle	Administratively down or waiting- needs TCP session initiated by peer. Listening.
Connect	TCP handshake. If successful, router sends Open message and changes to OpenSent. If not, router resets the ConnectRetry timer and goes to Active state. If timer reaches 0 while the router is in Connect state, timer is reset and another attempt is made, remaining in Connect.
Active	TCP connection ok, but no BGP messages sent to peer yet. Can also mean Connect wasn't successful so it's trying again. If ConnectRetry timer expires, it kicks back to Connect state.
OpenSent/	TCP connection exists, an Open message has been sent to peer. Transitions to OpenReceive to wait for

OpenReceive	initial keepalive from peer to move into OpenConfirm state. If TCP disconnect received, router terminates session, resets ConnectRetry timer, and goes back to Active.
OpenConfirm	Open messages finished, initial keepalive received. Sends Keepalives to peer to see configs match, and listens. On receipt of keepalive, moves to Established, else moves to Idle
Established	Achieved after receiving more Keepalives from peer. All neighbor parameters match, the neighbor relationship works, and the peers can now exchange Update messages.

To check state, use **sh ip bgp summary**. The State/PfxRcd column shows a numeric value for a state of Established- if not in an Established state, the value in this heading lists the text name of the current BGP state

All BGP messages share the same header, composed of:

- 16 byte marker field: set to all 1s to detect a loss of synchronization.
- 2 byte length field: indicate total length of BGP message, range from 19 to 4096
- There is a PA field in Update (AS Path Attribute)
- 1 byte type field: type code, indicate different BGP messages - the number in () below

Message (type#)	Purpose
Open (1)	First message after TCP connection has established to get neighborship started. BGP version, ASN, hold timer, BGP identifier, optional authentication
Keepalive (4)	Maintain peering. Contains only header. Keepalives exchanged every 60 sec by default. By default, hold timer is 3x keepalive interval. Updates can also reset keepalive interval
Update (2)	Used to exchange PAs and the associated prefix/length (NLRI) that uses those attributes. Each contains a single set of PAs and all related NLRI. Also contain withdrawn routes.
Notification (3)	Signals error with code, subcode, and data. Often signals to resets connection

All prefixes, except filtered by **neighbor <ipaddr> route-map <name> in**, are in the routing table for calculation.

eBGP neighborship

To configure BGP, you need at least 2 commands:

```
config)#router bgp <asn>
config-router)#neighbor <ipaddr> remote-as <remote-asn>
```

For BGP neighbor relationship to form,

- TCP connection between them must first be established
- Both routers need complimentary **neighbor <ipaddr> remote-as <asn>** with matching ASN and the IP address of the interface for which TCP packets will exit (if the interface is not explicitly defined)
- BGP RID must not be the same
- MD5 authentication must pass (if configured)

BGP RID is established by

- 1) **bgp router-id <rid>** - OR -
- 2) highest IP address of any up/up loopback interfaces at BGP initialization
- 3) highest IP address of any up/up normal interface at BGP initialization

To configure authentication, use **neighbor <ipaddr> password <password>** on both routers. The <ipaddr> refers to the IP address of the other router, while password must be identical for neighborship to succeed.

To verify neighborship **show ip bgp neighbors**, and **show tcp brief** to display the TCP connection
Use **neighbor <ipaddr> shutdown** to shut down that connection, move to Idle (keeps neighbor config).

The 'neighbor' command can be configured with the **peer-group** parameter, so one set of commands can be applied to all neighbors in the peer-group (either external or internal, not both)

Simplify configuration and reduce updates.

```
neighbor <name> peer-group
neighbor <ipaddr> peer-group <name>
(neighbor must have 'neighbor remote-as' set).
```

In most IGPs, the network command starts the routing process on an interface.

In BGP, the command tells the router to originate an advertisement for that network.

- network does not have to be connected - it just has to be in the routing table.
- can even be a network in a different AS (not usually recommended, but next-hop-self sort of does it)

BGP assumes you are using the default classful subnet mask.

- need to advertise a subnet? Use the optional keyword **mask** and specify the subnet mask to use
- routing table must contain an exact match (prefix and subnet mask)

Network declarations need to be SPECIFIC

If you misconfigure a **network** command, like **network 192.168.1.1 mask 255.255.255.0**, BGP will look for exactly 192.168.1.1/24 in the routing table. With no match, BGP won't announce it to neighbors.

If you issue the command **network 192.168.0.0 mask 255.255.0.0** to advertise a CIDR block, BGP will look for ONLY 192.168.0.0/16 in the routing table. It may find 192.168.1.0/24 or 192.168.1.1/32; however, it may never find 192.168.0.0/16. In this case, you can configure a static route towards a null interface so BGP can find an exact match in the routing table: **ip route 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0 null0**

BGP and Loopback Addresses

- Recall that a loopback interface provides a more robust configuration - it never goes down, so it adds more stability than physical the ones, and BGP will still operate if the link to the closest interface fails.

If the physically connected port is down:

- The router can still send the packet without being interrupted because loopback is always up.
- If another interface tries to reach the neighbor it will be blocked when source address doesn't match.

When multiple links exist between 2 BGP routers, and you would like to establish BGP neighborship between them, there are 2 options:

- configure a connection for each physical interface; consumes bandwidth and memory.
- Configure connections using virtual (loopback) interfaces, which requires less bandwidth and memory, and ensure the interface is always up/up.

eBGP assumes that neighbors are directly connected and peering with the IP of that specific interface. If not, you must use **neighbor ip-address ebgp-multihop number-of-hops** command. If you are peering with loopback interface IP addresses, you are going to have to use it.

iBGP assumes that internal neighbors might not be directly connected, so this command is not needed. With loopback IP addresses in iBGP, you must change the source to match the loopback with **neighbor ip-address update-source interface**

Router(config-router)#**neighbor 172.16.1.2 update-source loopback0**

- Without neighbor **update-source**, iBGP will use the closest IP interface to the peer. In the case of a point-to-point eBGP session, this command is not needed because there is only one path for BGP to use.

Using loopback and update-source for connections whether iBGP or eBGP is considered a best practice. It ensures an alternate route to the specific router is available if the physical interface goes down

BGP Path Attributes - Manipulating Path Selection

Routes learned via BGP have properties referred to as *BGP attributes*, and an understanding of how they influence route selection is required for the design of robust networks.

PA	Description	Route Direction
NEXT_HOP	Next-hop IP address used to reach a prefix.	N/A
Weight[1]	Range 0 - $2^{16} - 1$, set when receiving updates. Not advertised to any BGP peers. Cisco proprietary	Outbound
LOCAL_PREF	Range 0 - $2^{32} - 1$, set and spread throughout an AS to influence the choice of best route for all routers in that AS	Outbound
AS_PATH (length)	The number of ASNs in the AS_Path PA.	Outbound, Inbound
ORIGIN	Value implying the route was injected into BGP; I (IGP), E (EGP), or ? (incomplete information).	Outbound
Multi-Exit Discrim (MED)	Set and advertised by routers in an AS, impacting the BGP decision of routers in the other AS. Smaller is better.	Inbound

Four categories of attributes exist as follows:

- Well-known mandatory: Must be recognized by all BGP routers, present in all BGP updates, and passed on to other BGP routers. For example, **AS path, origin, and next hop**.
- Well-known discretionary: Must be recognized by all BGP routers and passed on to other BGP routers but need not be present in an update, for example, **local preference**.
- Optional transitive: Might or might not be recognized by a BGP router but is passed on to other BGP routers. If not recognized, it is marked as partial, for example, **aggregator, community**.
- Optional nontransitive: Might or might not be recognized by a BGP router and is not passed on to other routers, for example, **Multi-Exit Discriminator (MED), originator ID**.

BGP Path Selection Criteria

1. Highest weight (most local).
2. Highest LOCAL_PREF (inside an AS this is global).
3. Choose routes that this router originated (next-hop = 0.0.0.0)
4. Shortest AS_PATH
5. Lowest origin type/code - (i)iBGP is lowest, (e)eBGP is next, and ? is last
6. Lowest MED (if the same AS advertises the possible routes)
7. eBGP wins over an iBGP route.
8. Nearest IGP neighbor (lowest IGP metric)
9. Oldest route (for eBGP to minimize the effects of route flapping)
10. Lowest router ID.
11. Lowest IP address.

BGP only chooses one route as the best route (thus, no load balancing). Step 1, 2, and 4 are typically used to influence outbound routes, while MED for outbound routes. 9, 10 and 11 aren't used except in a tie

Mnemonic: N WLLA OMNI

Step	Mnemonic Letter	Short Phrase	Which Is Better?
0	N	Next hop: reachable?	If no route to reach Next_Hop, router cannot use this route.
1	W	Weight	Bigger weight.
2	L	LOCAL_PREF	Larger preference.
3	L	Locally injected routes	Locally injected 'network' is better than iBGP/eBGP learned.
4	A	AS_PATH length	Smaller paths win
5	O	ORIGIN	Prefer I over E. Prefer E over ?
6	M	MED	Smaller Multi-Exit Discriminator (MED)
7	N	Neighbor Type	Prefer eBGP over iBGP.
8	I	IGP metric to Next_Hop	Smaller metric wins. If no IGP is used, consider tied.
9	A	Age equals seniority	Oldest eBGP route
10	O	think not OSPF	Route with lowest BGP RID
11	S	think not OSPF	Route with lowest neighbor IP address

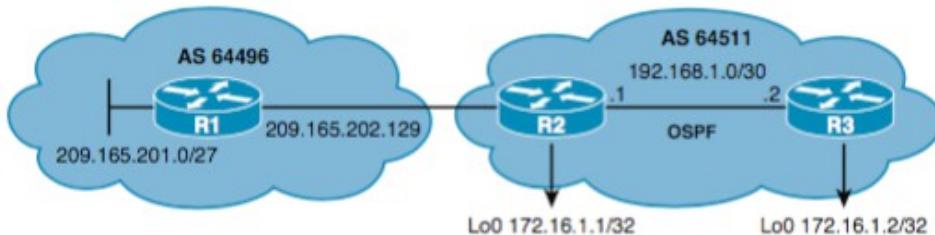
BGP - Basic Configuration

router bgp 100.	Starts BGP routing process 100
neighbor 192.31.7.1 remote-as 200	Add a peer for sessions. The ASN tells if eBGP or iBGP
network 192.135.250.0	What locally learned networks to advertise.
network 128.107.0.0 mask 255.255.255.0	Specify an individual subnet.
(no) neighbor 24.1.1.2 shutdown"	Disable/-enable an active session
timers bgp 90 240	Timers. Keepalive (default 60sec) Holdtime (default 180sec)
neighbor 172.16.1.2 update-source loopback0	Use this specific interface
(no) synchronization	iBGP route must be added to table by other IGP before used

Synchronization is off by default in later IOS. Using iBGP meshes is preferred. Redistribution from BGP into an IGP when using BGP for MPLS is reasonable and commonly done. See SWITCH book pg 617 on avoiding loops

iBGP Next-Hop Behavior

- The eBGP next-hop attribute is the IP address that is used to reach the advertising router; an edge router belonging to the autonomous system "next door", in most cases, the IP address of the connection between peers.
 - For iBGP, the eBGP next-hop address is not changed, carried into the local autonomous system as-is.
- The next-hop-self command is a way to get around this (illustrated below)
- R2 tells R3 that it instead will be the next-hop address when trying to reach networks outside its autonomous system.

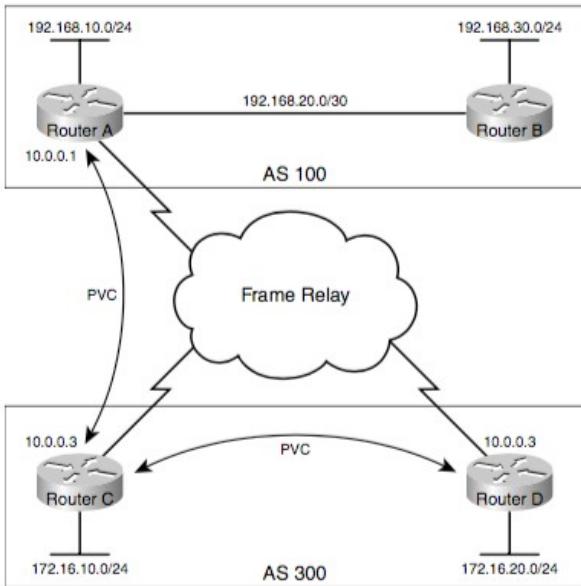


Setup on R2:

router bgp 64511	Starts the BGP routing process.
neighbor 209.165.202.129 remote-as 64496	Identifies R1 as an eBGP neighbor
neighbor 172.16.1.2 remote-as 64511	Identifies R3 as an iBGP neighbor
neighbor 172.16.1.2 update-source loopback0	Loopback0 IP is source for all BGP TCP packets to R3
neighbor 172.16.1.2 next-hop-self	Advertises itself as next hop for networks from other AS

R3 will then use R2 as the next hop instead of using the eBGP next-hop of 209.165.202.129.

Here is another example in a slightly different setup where it is almost mandatory:



RouterC(config)#router bgp 300

RouterC(config-router)#neighbor 10.0.0.1 remote-as 100

RouterC(config-router)#neighbor 10.0.0.1 next-hop-self

- Forces all updates to 10.0.0.1 to advertise this router as next hop

- Router C advertises 172.16.20.0 to Router A with next hop of 10.0.0.3 as if the common media were Ethernet.

- Routing will fail - Router A has no direct PVC to Router D and cannot reach the next hop

- To remedy this situation, neighbor next-hop-self causes Router C to advertise 172.16.20.0 with next-hop set to its 10.0.0.3.

- This proves useful in non-meshed networks (such as Frame Relay or X.25) where BGP neighbors might not have direct access to all other neighbors on the same IP subnet.

RouterC(config-router)#neighbor 10.0.0.1 next-hop-unchanged

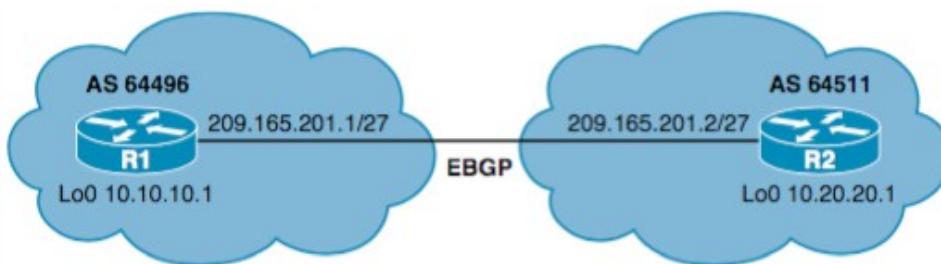
Enables an eBGP multihop peer to propagate the next hop unchanged.

Do not use with route reflector setups

This command should not be configured on a route reflector, and the neighbor next-hop-self command should not be used to modify the next-hop attribute for a route reflector when this feature is enabled for a route reflector client.

eBGP Multihop

By default, eBGP neighbors exchange packets with a TTL set to 1. Even though eBGP neighbors are usually directly connected (over a WAN connection) to establish sessions, sometimes one of the directly connected routers is unable to run BGP. The command **ebgp-multihop** allows for a logical connection to be made between peer routers, even if not directly connected - up to 255 hops away and still be able to create an eBGP session. The **ebgp-multihop** is only used for eBGP sessions, and must be configured on each peer (each end). If you attempt to establish eBGP session between loopbacks, BGP packets will be dropped due to an expired TTL.



R1(config)# ip route 10.20.20.1 255.255.255.255 209.165.201.2

- Define a static route to Loopback0 on R2.

R1(config)# router bgp 64496

R1(config-router)# neighbor 10.20.20.1 remote-as 64511

- Identifies a peer router at 10.20.20.1

```

R1(config-router)# neighbor 10.20.20.1 update-source loopback0
R1(config-router)# neighbor 10.20.20.1 ebgp-multipath 2
    - Allows for two routers (not directly connected) to establish an eBGP session with TTL of 2.
R2(config)# ip route 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255 209.165.201.1
    - Define a static route to Loopback0 on R1.
R2(config)# router bgp 64511
R2(config-router)# neighbor 10.10.10.1 remote-as 64496
R2(config-router)# neighbor 10.10.10.1 update-source loopback0
R2(config-router)# neighbor 10.10.10.1 ebgp-multipath 2
    - Allows for two routers (not directly connected) to establish an eBGP session with TTL of 2.

```

Loopbacks on eBGP need ebgp-multipath

If redundant links exist between two eBGP neighbors and loopback addresses are used, you must configure **ebgp-multipath** because of the default TTL of 1. Otherwise, the router decrements the TTL before giving the packet to the loopback interface, meaning that the normal IP forwarding logic discards the packet. Configuring the value to 2 solves the problem.

Default Routes, default-originate to give default to specific neighbors

For a default route to send to all neighbors/peers you just use **network 0.0.0.0** (be sure it's in the routing table)
For the default route 0.0.0.0 to only be advertised to a specific neighbor, use **neighbor 192.168.100.1 default-originate**

BGP Peer Groups

To ease the burden of configuring a large number of neighbors with identical or similar parameters (for example, route maps, filter lists, or prefix lists), the concept of peer groups was introduced. Simply configure a peer group with all the BGP parameters that are to be applied to many BGP peers. BGP neighbors are bound to the peer group, and the network administrator applies the peer group configuration on each of the BGP sessions. The result below, all four iBGP neighbors have the same basic BGP configuration assigned to them.

router bgp 65500	Starts the BGP routing process
neighbor INTERNAL peer-group	Creates a BGP peer group called INTERNAL
neighbor INTERNAL remote-as 65500	Assigns a first parameter to the peer group
neighbor INTERNAL next-hop-self	Assigns a second parameter to the group
neighbor INTERNAL update-source loopback0	Assigns a third parameter to the peer group
neighbor INTERNAL route-reflector-client	Assigns a fourth parameter to the peer group
neighbor 192.168.1.2 peer-group INTERNAL	Assigns the peer group to neighbor R2
neighbor 192.168.1.3 peer-group INTERNAL	... to neighbor R3
neighbor 192.168.1.4 peer-group INTERNAL	... to neighbor R4
neighbor 192.168.1.5 peer-group INTERNAL	... to neighbor R5

A peer group can be, among others, configured to do the following:

- Use IP of a specific interface as source address when opening the TCP session or use next-hop-self feature
- Use, or not use, things like the eBGP multihop function, or MD5 authentication on the BGP sessions.
- Filter out any incoming or outgoing routes using a prefix list, a filter list, and a route map.
- Assign a particular weight value to the routes that are received.

MP-BGP

Original BGP was designed for only IPv4. Multiprotocol BGP can run over as IPv6, multicast IPv4, and MPLS - can exchange routes for IPv4, IPv6, or both. The extensions enable NEXT_HOP to carry IPv6 addresses and NLRI (Network Layer Reachability Information) to an IPv6 prefix, thanks to TCP. The IPv4 and IPv6 routes use separate TCP connections.

```

R1(config)#ipv6 unicast-routing
R1(config)#router bgp 65500
R1(config-router)#neighbor 2001:0DB8:12::2 remote-as 65501
R1(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 65501
R1(config-router)#address-family ipv4 unicast
    - Enters IPv4 address family configuration mode for unicast prefixes (default IPv4)
R1(config-router-af)#neighbor 192.168.1.2 activate
    - Enables the exchange of IPv4 BGP info with R2. IPv4 neighbors auto-activate, so keyword is optional.
R1(config-router-af)#network 10.1.1.1 mask 255.255.255.255
R1(config-router)#address-family ipv6 unicast
    - Enters IPv6 address family configuration mode for unicast address prefixes.
R1(config-router-af)#neighbor 2001:0DB8:12::2 activate
    - Enables the exchange of IPv6 BGP information with R2.
R1(config-router-af)#network 2001:0DB8:1::1/64

```

Router2 would have a reciprocal set of the same commands to work with R1.

Recall that the router ID is set on IPv4 addresses (**bgp router-id /IPv4_address**), IPv6 can still use it

Troubleshoot with **show bgp ipv6 unicast [optional: summary | neighbors]** and **show ipv6 route bgp**

Route Aggregation - Setting the Atomic Aggregate attribute

- A BGP router can transmit overlapping routes (nonidentical routes pointing to the same destination)
- When making a best path decision, a router always chooses the more specific path.

R1(config-router)#**aggregate-address 172.16.0.0 255.255.0.0**

- Creates aggregate entry in the BGP table to cover specific BGP routes in that range.
- More specific routes will still be sent unless **summary-only** is used.

R1(config-router)#**aggregate-address 172.16.0.0 255.255.0.0 summary-only**

- Creates aggregate route AND suppresses advertisement of more-specific routes.
- Specific AS_PATH info on those subnets are lost.

R1(config-router)#**aggregate-address 172.16.0.0 255.255.0.0 as-set**

- Creates an aggregate entry but the path advertised will be an AS_SET (list of AS_PATHs)

Below is a use of aggregate route as a precaution: to send an aggregate address, we only need one of the more specific routes configured. But by configuring all of them, and *not* using **summary-only**, they will all be sent, and the aggregate will be sent in case one of the networks goes down.

```
Lubbock(config)#router bgp 1
Lubbock(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as 2
Austin(config)#router bgp 2
Austin(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 1
Austin(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Austin(config-router)#network 172.16.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Austin(config-router)#network 172.16.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Austin(config-router)#aggregate- address 172.16.0.0 255.255.252.0
```

Thus, both Lubbock and Austin will have all the specific routes *and* the aggregate address in its BGP table

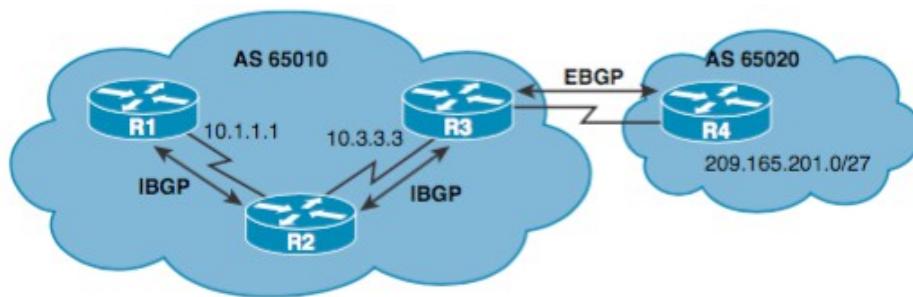
```
Lubbock#show ip bgp 172.16.0.0 255.255.252.0
BGP routing table entry for 172.16.0.0/22, version 18
Paths: (1 available, best #1)
<text omitted>
Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, atomic-aggregate,
best
```

Route Reflectors

By default, a router that receives an eBGP route advertises it to its eBGP and iBGP peers.

If it receives it through iBGP, it won't advertise it to its iBGP peers, as loop-prevention

One way for all iBGP routers to receive a route after it is originated into the AS is to have a full mesh of iBGP peers, which can get complex with a large number of peers. Route reflectors eliminate resorting to that.



The objective is to allow R2 to advertise to R1 the 209.165.201.0/27 network learned from R3. Without these commands, R1 would never learn the 209.165.201.0/27 network without a full-mesh iBGP topology.

R2(config)# router bgp 65010	Enters BGP routing configuration mode
R2(config-router)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 route-reflector-client	Designates a BGP route reflector and the specified neighbor as a client
R2(config-router)# neighbor 10.3.3.3 route-reflector-client	Designates a BGP route reflector and the specified neighbor as a client

Verifying and Troubleshooting BGP Connections

show ip bgp	Displays entries in the BGP routing table - AS_PATH with the last ASN; Internal is 'l'. '*' is valid, and '>' is best route
show ip bgp prefix [subnet-mask]	List possible routes, per prefix [e.g., for default 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0]
show ip bgp <ipsubnet/cidr> longer-prefixes	Show which route is older by placing its entry later
show ip bgp neighbors	Info about BGP/ TCP connections to neighbors, neighbor info
show ip bgp neighbors <address> [routes received-routes advertised-routes]	Monitor routes received/ learned from a specific neighbor.
show ip bgp rib-failure	List networks not put into the Routing Information Base (RIB) and the reason not used
show ip bgp summary	Status of all BGP connections, memory use of BGP databases, activity stats and list of BGP neighbors
show ip route bgp	Displays the BGP entries from the routing table

show tcp brief to display the TCP connection

Use **neighbor <ipaddr> shutdown** to shut down that connection, move to Idle (keeps neighbor config)

show ip bgp [peer-group | regexp | community-list]

show access-lists and **show ip access-lists**

debug ip bgp, **debug ip bgp events**, **debug ip bgp ipv4 unicast**, **debug ip bgp updates**

clear ip bgp * - Forces BGP to clear its table and the * resets all BGP sessions. Put IP for a specific neighbor

Using the form **clear ip bgp *** is both processor and memory intensive - use only in smaller environments.

However, you may need to use this form when the following changes occur: Additions or changes to the BGP-related access lists, weights, distribution lists, BGP timer's specifications, administrative distance, or route maps

clear ip bgp 10.1.1.2 soft out - The **soft** keyword forces the remote router to resend all BGP info **without** resetting the connection. Routes from this neighbor are not lost. Works when changing outbound policy, does not help if you are changing an inbound policy. The keyword **out** means for all outbound updates (inbound is **in**).

Hard reset can be harsh - the underlying TCP connection is zapped so neighborship drops, removes all BGP table entries from that neighbor. It's a long recovery that interrupts routing, causes flapping with disassociated peers, and the full set of routing updates generates tons of traffic. Soft resets don't bring down the neighborship or TCP connection, and just resends adjusted outgoing updates, which then adjust the BGP table. It is supported with route refresh capability included in all modern IOS versions

neighbor 10.1.1.2 soft-reconfiguration inbound Causes the router to store all updates from this neighbor. This is memory intensive, but is a safeguard before running **clear ip bgp** that a copy of the routing info is indeed saved first (arguably paranoid since there is the **clear ip bgp x.x.x.x soft** option)

Routing Information Base failures (IP routing table omissions)

When the BGP best-path algorithm has chosen a best route for a prefix, it gets handed to the Routing Table Manager (RTM) that weighs all routes by administrative distance before adding to the routing table [aka Routing Information Base (RIB)]

Generally, a prefix learned with BGP should not conflict with a connected or IGP-learned route. Sometimes it arises when implementing MPLS VPNs with BGP/IGP redistribution. The **show ip bgp rib-failures** command lists routes which BGP has chosen as best, but the RTM function has not placed into the IP routing table.

As an example, consider two routers R1 and R2 finding their route to 185.0.0.0/8 - R1 learns about it from eBGP (AD of 20), but inside the AS, R2 sees it from both OSPF and iBGP. R2's BGP determined a best route, but the RTM instead chose the lower-AD OSPF route (AD 110) rather than the higher-AD iBGP route (AD 200). Running **show ip bgp rib-failure** shows one line for each best BGP route that the RTM does not place into the IP routing table. In this case, this command on R2 lists the route for 185.0.0.0/8.

```
E2# show ip bgp rib-failure
```

Network	Next Hop	RIB-failure	RIB-NH Matches
185.0.0.0/8	10.100.1.1	Higher admin distance	n/a

Contents of show ip bgp - A Deeper Look

The command **show ip bgp** shows the BGP topology database, which includes all the networks BGP knows about, the next hop, some of the attributes, and the AS path for each route.

```
route-server>show ip bgp
BGP table version is 22285573, local router ID is 12.0.1.28
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
r RIB-failure, S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
```

Network	Next Hop	Metric	LocPrf	Weight	Path
* 3.0.0.0	12.123.137.124		0	7018 2914 9304 80	i
*>	12.123.1.236		0	7018 2914 9304 80	i
* 3.51.92.0/23	12.123.137.124		0	7018	?
*	12.122.125.4	2366	0	7018	?
*>	12.123.1.236		0	7018	?
* 8.6.6.0/24	12.123.137.124		0	7018 701 14744 14744 14276	i
*	12.123.145.124		0	7018 701 14744 14744 14276	i
*>	12.123.1.236		0	7018 701 14744 14744 14276	i

Networks are listed in numerical order.

The first three columns list each route's status. They are one-character fields, squeezed together

The asterisk (*) in the first column means that the route has a valid next hop.

Other options:

s - suppressed: BGP knows about the network but is not advertising it, often if part of a summarized route.

d - dampened: BGP stopped advertising a network that flaps too often until it is stable for a period of time.

h - history: BGP knows about this network but does not currently have a valid route to it.

r - RIB failure: advertised route but not put in routing table. Another protocol may have route with a better AD.

S - stale: Used with nonstop forwarding - route needs to be refreshed when the peer is reestablished.

The second column has a greater-than sign (>) beside the route that was selected as the best path to that network. In the example, the second route was selected for network 3.0.0.0.

The third column is blank in the example, which means that the router learned all the routes from an external neighbor. A route learned from an IBGP neighbor would have an "I" in the third column. (a - aggregate, i - internal)

The fourth column lists the networks. Those without a subnet mask, such as network 3.0.0.0, use their classful mask. As seen in the example, when the router learns about the same network from multiple sources, it lists only the network once.

The fifth column lists the next-hop address for each route. This might or might not be a directly connected router. A next-hop of 0.0.0.0 means that the local router originated the route (and/or, the router has non-BGP routes to the network).

Inter-autonomous system metric - If a Med value was received with the route, it is listed in the Metric column. Notice that the advertisement for network 3.51.92.0/23 from the router at 12.122.125.4 has a large Med value of 2366. Because the default Local Preference is used for each of the routes shown, no local preference value is displayed. The default Weight value of 0 is listed, however.

Toward the end is the AS path for each network. Reading this field from left to right, the first AS number shown is the adjacent AS this router learned the route from. After that, the AS paths that this route traversed are shown in order. The last AS number listed is the originating AS. In the example, our router received an advertisement about network 3.0.0.0 from its neighbor AS 7018, which heard about it from AS 2914, which heard about it from AS 9304. And AS 9304 learned the route from AS 80, which originated it. A blank AS path means that the route was originated in the local AS.

In the AS Path column, note that network 8.6.6.0 shows AS 14744 twice in its AS path list. Most likely AS 14744 has prepended an extra copy of its AS number to make the path through it less attractive than the path through other autonomous systems. In this case it did not work because the only paths to 8.6.6.0 this router knows about all go through AS 14744.

The last column shows how BGP originally learned about the route.

- Networks 3.0.0.0 and 8.6.6.0 show an "i" for their origin codes. This means that the originating router had a network statement for that route.

- Network 3.51.92.0 shows a "?" as its origin. This means that the route was redistributed into BGP; BGP considers it an "incomplete" route.

- You will likely never see the third possibility, an "e," because that means BGP learned the route from the Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP), which is no longer in use.

If you specify an address this is how it will display:

router#**show ip bgp 66.66.66.66**

```
BGP routing table entry for 66.66.66.66/32
Paths: (2 available, best #1)
  66.66.66.66/32
    3 i comm 65535:65281
      172.16.23.3 from 172.16.23.3 (peer 3.3.3.3)
        Origin IGP, local pref 100, weight 0, valid, best
        BGP Path Selection Criterion: Lowest BGP Neighbor Router-ID
        IGP Metric: 0 IGP Pref: 0 IGP Protocol: DIRECT
        IGP Next Hop: 0.0.0.0 Route Age: 0:03:22
  66.66.66.66/32 (Second best)
    77 i comm 65535:65281
      172.16.12.1 from 172.16.12.1 (peer 172.16.12.1)
        Origin IGP, local pref 100, weight 0, valid
        IGP Metric: 0 IGP Pref: 0 IGP Protocol: DIRECT
        IGP Next Hop: 0.0.0.0 Route Age: 0:02:21
```

Originator	Specifies the router ID of the originator of the route in the local AS.
Cluster list	A sequence of cluster ID values for the reflection path that the route has passed.
Path	Autonomous system path to the destination network. One entry in this field per autonomous system in the path.
Origin codes	Identifies the origin of the entry. Valid values previously mentioned (i, e, ?)
Origin	Identifies the origin of the entry as: IGP, EGP, Not clear, or Best.
LocPrf	Local preference value. See the set local-preference route map configuration command. Default value is 100.
Weight	Weight of the route as defined by set weight and router bgp route map
BGP path selection criteria	Displays tie-breaking criterion for best path selection.
IGP Metric	Specifies the IS-IS metric or OSPF cost value.
IGP Protocol	IGP Protocol: IS-IS or OSPF.
IGP Next-Hop	IP address of the next system used when forwarding packets to the destination network. 0.0.0.0 in this field indicates router has non-BGP routes to the network.
Route Age	Specifies the time in <i>hours:minutes:seconds</i> that a route has been valid.
Second best	Displays second best path information.

Overview of Specific BGP Attributes

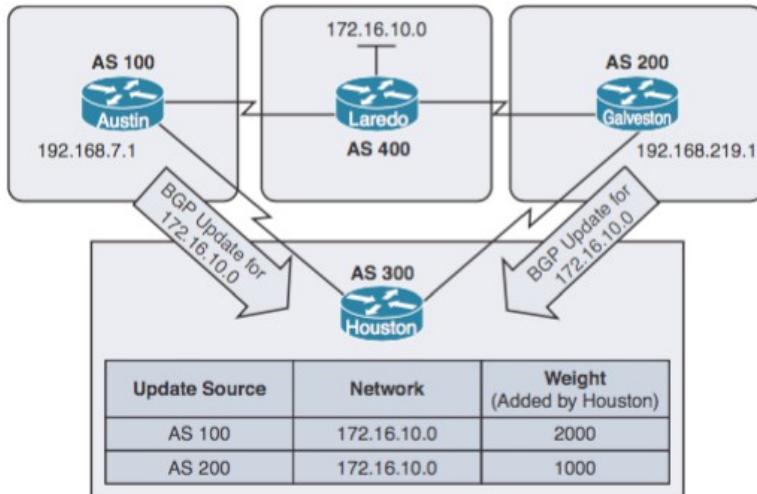
Weight Attribute

The weight attribute is a proprietary Cisco attribute

- configured locally on a router and is not propagated to any other routers.
- applies when one router is used with multiple exit points out of an autonomous system
- (local preference attribute is used when two or more routers provide multiple exit points)

Routes with a higher weight are preferred when there are multiple routes to the same destination.
[value ranges from 0 to 65,535, 0 for learned routes, and 32,768 for locally injected routes]

By default, the weight attribute is 32,768 for paths that the router originates, and 0 for other paths.



```
Houston(config)#router bgp 300
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.7.1 remote-as 100
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.7.1 weight 2000
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.219.1 remote-as 200
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.219.1 weight 1000
```

Has Houston forward traffic to the 172.16.10.0 network through AS 100, because the routes entering AS 300 from AS 100 have a higher weight attribute set compared to that same routes advertised from AS 200.

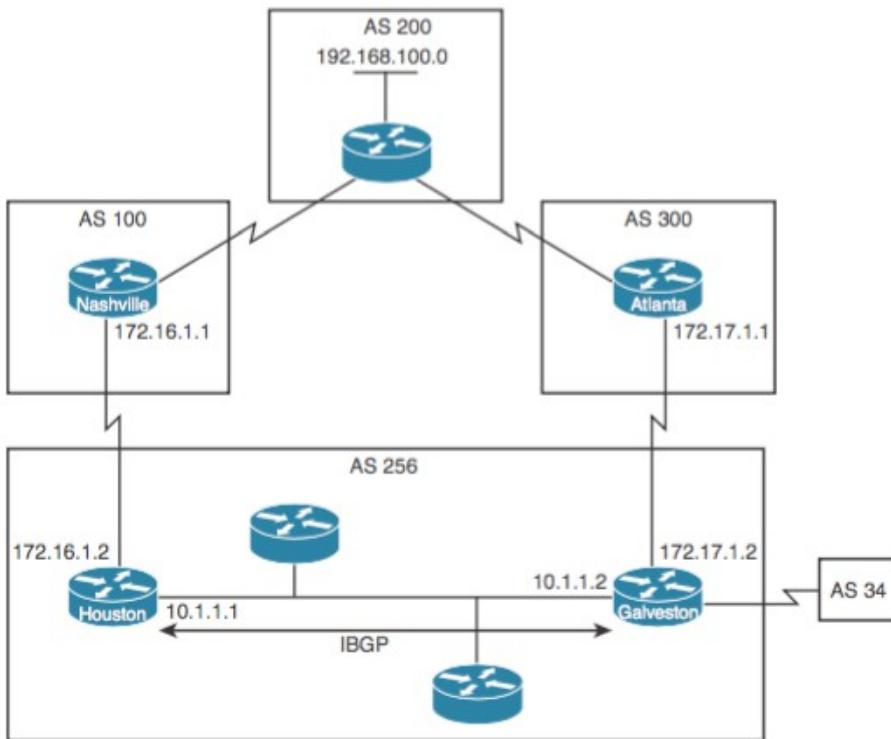
When a router receives a BGP Update, that router can set the Weight either selectively, per route, using a route map, or for all routes learned from a single neighbor

Local Preference Attribute

- use to force BGP routers to prefer one exit point over another for leaving the AS
- value can be between 0 and 429,496,729. Higher is preferred, default is 100
- It is local to the AS; it is exchanged between iBGP peers - **not advertised to eBGP peers**.
- Recall also that BGP does not allow a router to advertise iBGP-learned routes to iBGP peers

```
Houston(config)#router bgp 256
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.1.1 remote-as 100
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as 256
Houston(config-router)#bgp default local-preference 150
Galveston(config)#router bgp 256
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 172.17.1.1 remote-as 300
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 256
Galveston(config-router)#bgp default local-preference 200
```

Based on these two configurations, traffic destined for a remote network that can be reached through autonomous system 256 will be routed through Galveston.



Using AS_PATH Access Lists with Route Maps to Manipulate the Local Preference Attribute

Route maps provide more flexibility than the **bgp default local-preference** router configuration command.

```
Galveston(config)#router bgp 256
```

```
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 172.17.1.1 remote-as 300
```

```
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 172.17.1.1 route-map SETLOCAL in
```

- reference route map SETLOCAL.

```
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 256
```

```
Galveston(config)#ip as-path access-list 7 permit ^300$
```

- BGP ACL 7 says permit updates whose AS_PATH starts and ends with 300 (^ and \$)

```
Galveston(config)#route-map SETLOCAL permit 10
```

- creates route map SETLOCAL, sequence number of 10

```
Galveston(config-route-map)#match as-path 7
```

- condition when policy routing is allowed- match BGP ACL 7.

```
Galveston(config-route-map)#set local-preference 200
```

- assigns local pref of 200 to any update coming from autonomous system 300

```
Galveston(config-route-map)#route-map SETLOCAL permit 20
```

- close route map SETLOCAL with an allow to accept all other routes.

In this example, using the **route-map** command, only updates received from AS 300, as specified in the **ip as-path access-list** command, will have a local preference set to 200.

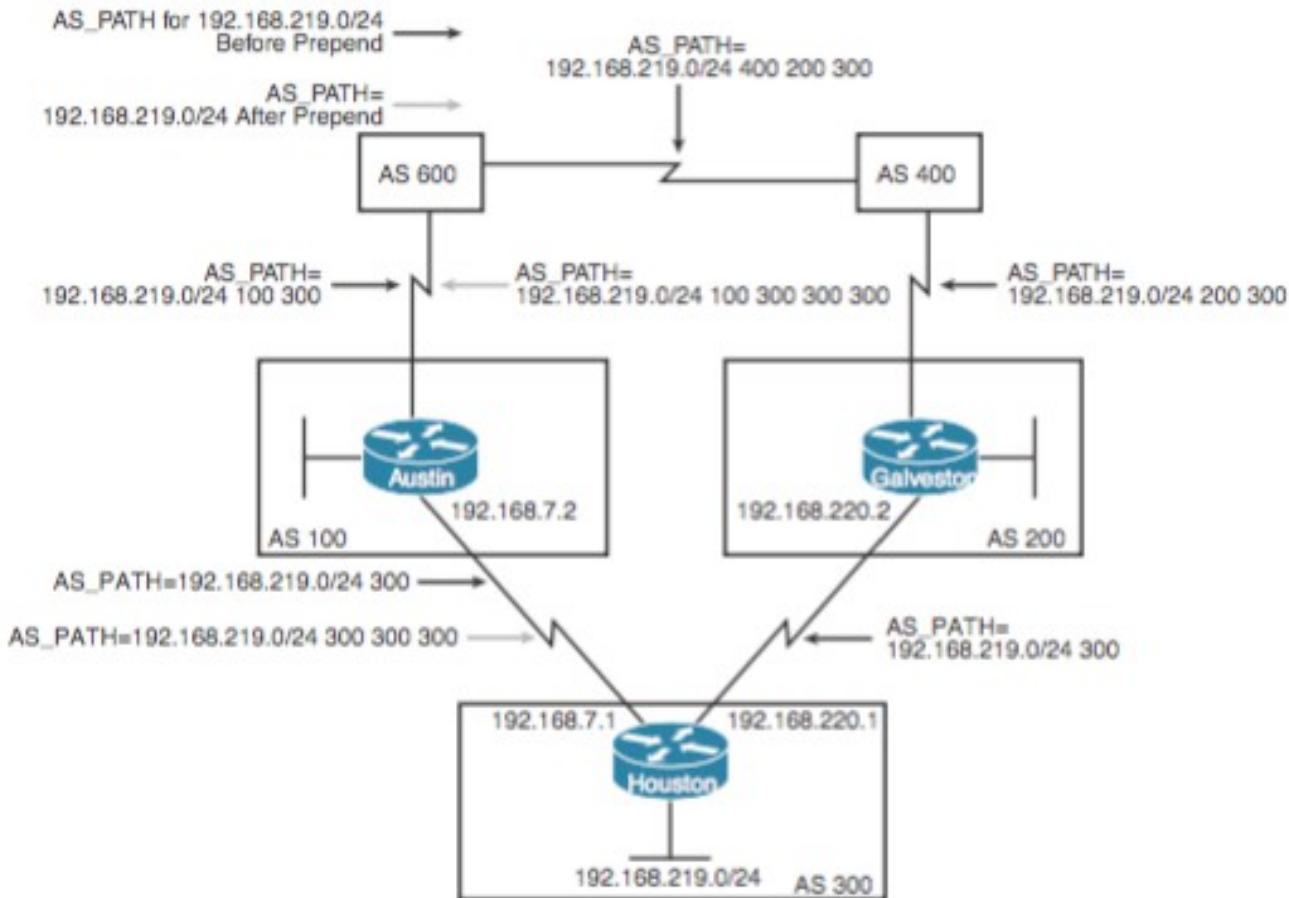
Through the **neighbor route-map** command; **in** option is required for updates from an eBGP peer

AS_PATH Attribute Prepending

AS paths can be manipulated by prepending, or adding, extra ASNs to the AS_PATH. By this attribute's criteria, the shortest AS_PATH attribute is preferred; making it longer advertises it as a less viable route.

```
Houston(config)#router bgp 300
Houston(config-router)#network 192.168.219.0
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.220.2 remote-as 200
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.7.2 remote-as 100
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.7.2 route-map SETPATH out
    - all routes going out to 192.168.7.2 are filtered with SETPATH route map
Houston(config)#route-map SETPATH permit 10
    - create route map SETPATH; sequence number of 10
Houston(config-route-map)#set as-path prepend 300 300
    - add 300 twice to the AS_PATH before sending to 192.168.7.2
```

In this scenario, you want to use the configuration of Houston to influence the choice of paths in AS 600. Currently, the routers in AS 600 have reachability information to the 192.168.219.0/24 network via two routes: via AS 100 with an AS_PATH attribute of (100, 300), and via AS 400 with an AS_PATH attribute of (400, 200, 300). Assuming that the values of all other attributes are the same, the routers in AS 600 will pick the shortest AS_PATH attribute: the route through AS 100. Thus, prepend, or add, extra AS numbers to the AS_PATH attribute for routes that Houston advertises to AS 100 to have AS 600 select AS 400 as the preferred path of reaching the 192.168.219.0/24 network.

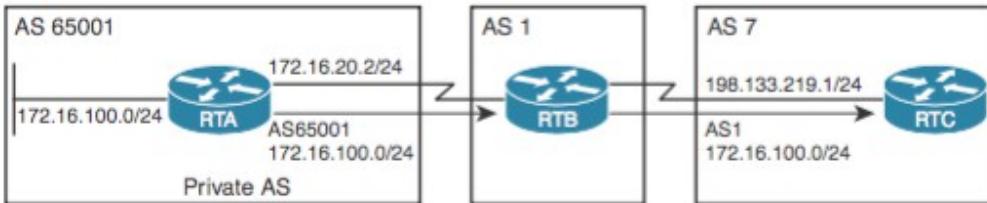


The result of this configuration is that the AS_PATH attribute of updates for network 192.168.219.0 that AS 600 receives via AS 100 will be (100, 300, 300, 300), which is longer than the value of the AS_PATH attribute of updates for network 192.168.219.0 that AS 600 receives via AS 400 (400, 200, 300).

AS 600 will choose AS 400 (400, 200, 300) as the better path.

AS_PATH: Removing Private Autonomous Systems

Private ASNs (64,512 to 65,535) cannot be passed on to the Internet because they are not unique. Use **remove-private-as**, to strip private ASNs out of the AS_PATH list before advertised



```

RTB(config)#router bgp 1
RTB(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.20.2 remote-as 65001
RTB(config-router)#neighbor 198.133.219.1 remote-as 7
RTB(config-router)#neighbor 198.133.219.1 remove-private-as

```

MED Attribute (Multi-Exit Discriminator)

Also called **the BGP metric**, indicates the preferred path is into an AS between two eBGP neighbors.

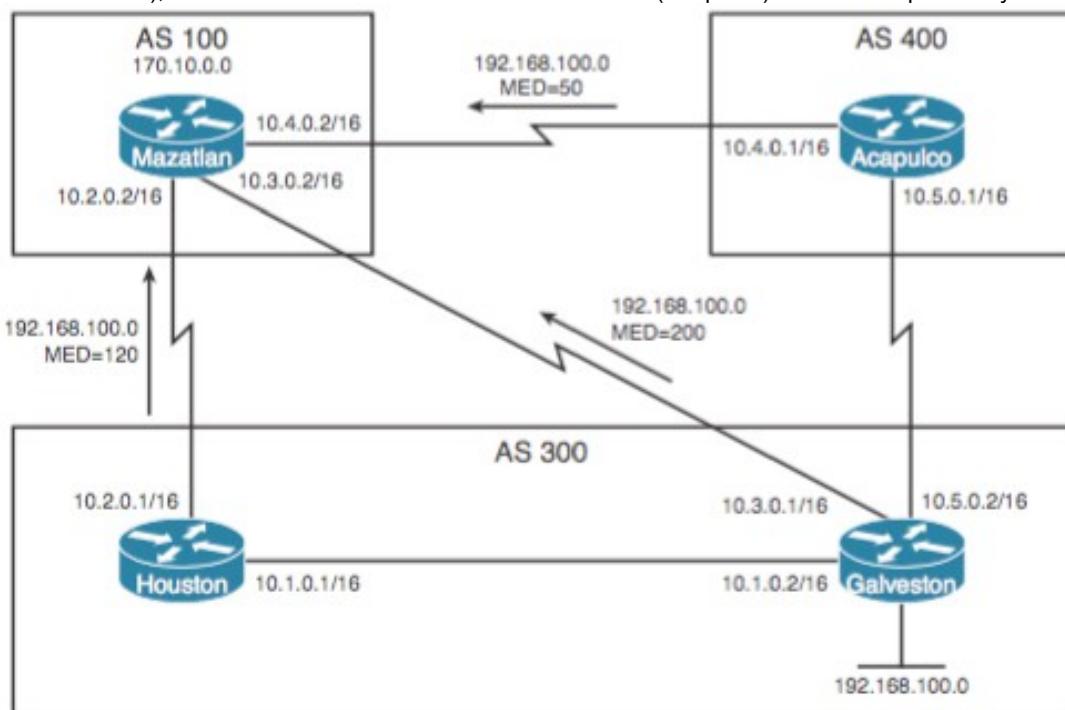
- AS to AS specific value describing that hop only- is not later handed to the next peer.

- **A lower value is preferred over a higher value.**

- The default value is 0. Change the default using the **default-metric**

- By default, only for paths from neighbors in the same AS. Override with **bgp always-compare-med**

Below, the routes for AS 300 to choose from are from Houston and Galveston. This is where MED is used by default (what it is intended for), so it won't be looked at in the case of AS 400 (Acapulco) unless it is specifically told to



Example: influence Mazatlan router to choose Houston as the entry point for AS 300 to reach 192.168.100.0.

```

Mazatlan(config)#router bgp 100
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.2.0.1 remote-as 300
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.3.0.1 remote-as 300
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.4.0.1 remote-as 400
Acapulco(config)#router bgp 400
Acapulco(config-router)#neighbor 10.4.0.2 remote-as 100
Acapulco(config-router)#neighbor 10.4.0.2 route-map SETMEDOUT out
    - reference route map SETMEDOUT.
Acapulco(config-router)#neighbor 10.5.0.2 remote-as 300
Acapulco(config)#route-map SETMEDOUT permit 10
    - create route map SETMEDOUT sequence number of 10
Acapulco(config-route-map)#set metric 50
    - set MED to 50

```

Houston and Galveston have same setup with relative neighbor statements. Below are MEDs they set:

```
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 10.2.0.2 route-map SETMEDOUT out
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 10.1.0.2 remote-as 300
Houston(config-route-map)#set metric 120
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 10.3.0.2 remote-as 100
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 10.3.0.2 route-map SETMEDOUT out
Galveston(config-route-map)#set metric 200
```

Mazatlan can only compare the MED attribute coming from Houston (120) to the MED attribute coming from Galveston (200) even though the update coming from Acapulco has the lowest MED value. Mazatlan will choose Houston as the best path for reaching network 192.168.100.0.

To force Mazatlan to include updates for network 192.168.100.0 from Acapulco in the comparison, use the **bgp always-compare-med** router configuration command on Mazatlan:

```
Mazatlan(config)#router bgp 100
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.2.0.1 remote-as 300
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.3.0.1 remote-as 300
Mazatlan(config-router)#neighbor 10.4.0.1 remote-as 400
Mazatlan(config-router)#bgp always-compare-med
```

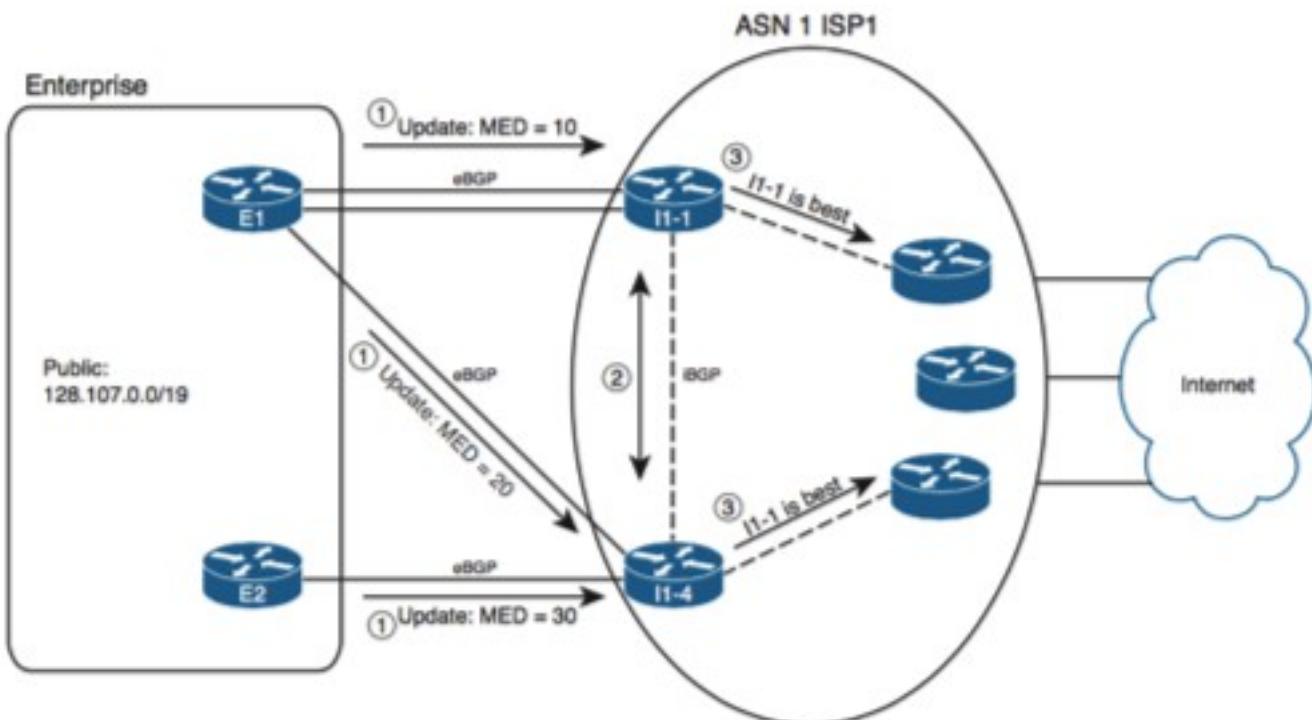
Assuming that all other attributes are the same, Mazatlan will choose Acapulco as the best next hop for reaching network 192.168.100.0.

The most recent IETF decision about BGP MED assigns a value of infinity to a missing MED, making that route the least preferred. The Cisco IOS default is the opposite - treating routes without the MED attribute as having a MED of 0, making the route that is lacking the MED variable the **most** preferred.

- To configure the router to conform to the IETF standard, use **bgp bestpath missing-as-worst**.

MED with a dual-homed single ISP

The enterprise can announce a MED that tells the ISP which path into the enterprise is best. As a result, the ISP can discriminate between the multiple exit points from that ISP to the enterprise. Those inbound routes into the enterprise from the ISP typically consist of either one, or a few, public IP address ranges. Say an enterprise engineer prefers the top BGP neighborship as the best path to use for inbound routes (MED 10), the middle link next (MED 20), and the bottom connection last (MED 30)



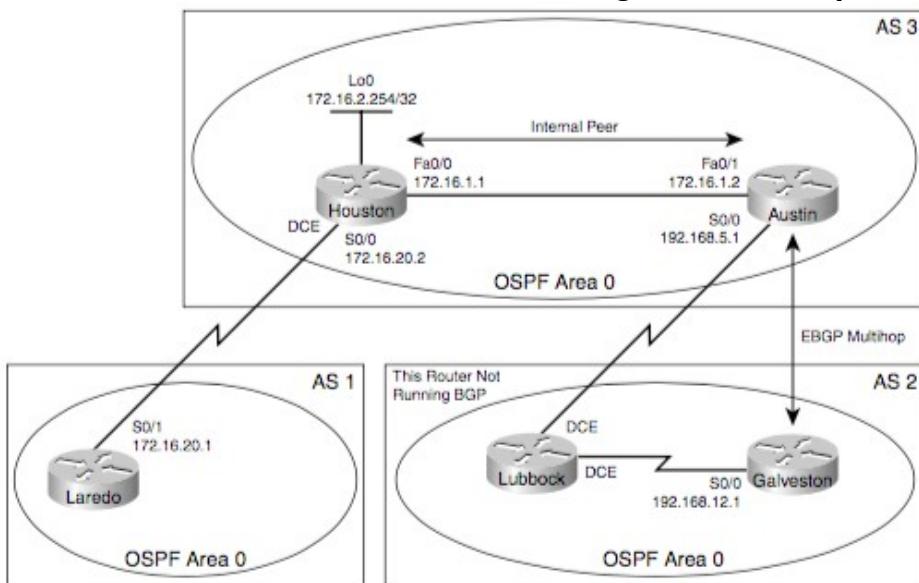
Step 1. E1 and E2 advertise 128.107.0.0/19, setting MED with an outbound route map, to various settings: MED 10 sent by E1 to I1-1, MED 20 sent by E1 to I1-4, and MED 30 sent by E2 to I1-4.

Step 2. I1-1 and I1-4 have an iBGP connection, so they learn each other's routes and agree as to which route wins based on MED.

Step 3. I1-1 and I1-4 also tell the other routers inside ISP1, causing all inbound traffic to funnel toward Router I1-1. (Remember MED is advertised by one AS into another, propagated inside the AS, but not sent to another AS.)

Note that Routers I1-1 and I1-4 in this example could have chosen a better route based on all the earlier best-path steps. However, a brief analysis of the steps tells us that unless someone makes an effort to override the effects of MED, these routers' best-path algorithms will use MED. Assuming that the enterprise and ISP agree to rely on MED, the earlier best-path steps should not matter.

BGP Configuration Example



Houston Router

Router(config)#hostname Houston	Sets the router name to Houston.
Houston(config)#interface loopback 0	Moves to loopback interface mode.
Houston(config-if)#ip address 172.16.2.254 255.255.255.255	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Houston(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/0	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Houston(config-if)#ip address 172.16.1.1 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Houston(config-if)#no shutdown	Enables the interface.
Houston(config-if)#interface serial 0/0/0	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Houston(config-if)#ip address 172.16.20.2 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Houston(config-if)#clock rate 56000	Assigns the clock rate.
Houston(config-if)#no shutdown	Activates the interface.
Houston(config-if)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Houston(config)#router ospf 1	Starts the OSPF routing process.
Houston(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 area 0	Any interface with 172.16.x.x to be placed into OSPF area 0.
Houston(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Houston(config)#router bgp 3	Starts the BGP routing process.
Houston(config-router)#no synchronization	Turns off route synchronization.
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.1.2 remote-as 3	Identifies a peer router at 172.16.1.2.
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.1.2 update-source loopback 0	Use any interface for TCP connections, as long as Loopback0 is configured.
Houston(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.20.1 remote-as 1	Identifies a peer router at 172.16.20.1.
Houston(config-router)#no auto-summary	Disables auto-summarization.
Houston(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Houston(config)#exit	Returns to privileged mode.
Houston#copy running-config startup- config	Saves the configuration to NVRAM.

Laredo Router

Router(config)#hostname Laredo	Sets the router name to Laredo.
Laredo(config)#interface serial 0/0/1	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Laredo(config-if)#ip address 172.16.20.1 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Laredo(config-if)#no shutdown	Activates the interface.
Laredo(config-if)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Laredo(config)#router bgp 1	Starts the BGP routing process.
Laredo(config-router)#no synchronization	Turns off route synchronization.
Laredo(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.20.2 remote-as 3	Identifies a peer router at 172.16.20.2.

Laredo(config-router)#no auto-summary	Disables auto-summarization.
Laredo(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Laredo(config)#exit	Returns to privileged mode.
Laredo#copy running-config startup- config	Saves the configuration to NVRAM.

Galveston Router

Router(config)#hostname Galveston	Sets router name to Galveston.
Galveston(config)#interface serial 0/0/0	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Galveston(config-if)#ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Galveston(config-if)#no shutdown	Activates the interface.
Galveston(config-if)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Galveston(config)#router ospf 1	Starts the OSPF routing process.
Galveston(config-router)#network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0	Any interface with 192.168.12.x to be placed into OSPF Area 0.
Galveston(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Galveston(config)#router bgp 2	Starts the BGP routing process.
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.5.1 remote-as 3	Identifies a peer router at 192.168.5.1.
Galveston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.5.1 ebgp-multihop 2	Two routers not directly connected need an eBGP session.
Galveston(config-router)#no auto-summary	Disables auto-summarization.
Galveston(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Galveston(config)#exit	Returns to privileged mode.
Galveston#copy running-config startup- config	Saves the configuration to NVRAM.

Austin Router

Router(config)#hostname Austin	Sets the router name to Austin.
Austin(config)#interface serial 0/0/0	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Austin(config-if)#ip address 192.168.5.1 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Austin(config-if)#no shutdown	Activates the interface.
Austin(config-if)#interface fastethernet 0/1	Moves to interface configuration mode.
Austin (config-if)#ip address 172.16.1.2 255.255.255.0	Assigns an IP address and netmask.
Austin(config-if)#no shutdown	Activates the interface.
Austin(config-if)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Austin(config)#router ospf 1	Starts the OSPF routing process.
Austin(config-router)#network 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 area 0	Any interface with 172.16.x.x to be placed into OSPF area 0.
Austin(config-router)#network 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255 area 0	Any interface with 192.168.5.x to be placed into OSPF area 0.
Austin(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Austin(config)#router bgp 3	Starts the BGP routing process.
Austin(config-router)#no synchronization	Turns off route synchronization.
Austin(config-router)#neighbor 172.16.2.254 remote-as 3	Identifies a peer router at 172.16.2.254.
Austin(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.12.1 remote-as 2	Identifies a peer router at 192.168.12.1.
Austin(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.12.1 ebgp-multihop 2	Two routers not directly connected need eBGP session.
Austin(config-router)#no auto-summary	Turns off auto-summarization.
Austin(config-router)#exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Austin(config)#exit	Returns to privileged mode.
Austin#copy running-config startup- config	Saves the configuration to NVRAM.

Syntax for BGP Filtering Methods

Traditional access lists not great for granular BGP filters

The old-school IOS ACLs we know might be seem like a good way to match traffic by prefix/subnet, but it can get to be a mess. Cisco IOS 12.0 came up with a better way with **prefix-list**, but it helps to know why this was done.

Here is an easy scenario: declare BGP neighbors, make a simple access list to match one subnet, and apply it with **distribute-list** to the updates going **out**, so we can say "don't send routing updates from that **access-list 1** to this neighbor". This works fine.

```
R1(config)# router bgp 3
R1(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.1.2 remote-as 3
R1(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.20.1 remote-as 1
R1(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.20.1 distribute-list 1 out
R1(config-router)# exit
R1(config)# access-list 1 deny 192.168.10.0 0.0.0.255
R1(config)# access-list 1 permit any
```

Problems come up when advertising the aggregate address of 172.16.0.0/16 but not the individual subnet- you need an extended ACL. The way those work with BGP route filters, the ACL will first match the network address and *then* match the subnet mask of the prefix. To do this, both network and netmask are paired with their own wildcard bitmask and it looks like this confusing, ugly mess:

```
access-list 101 permit ip 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 255.255.0.0 0.0.0.0
```

That is why IOS 12.0 gave us the **prefix-list** option.

Prefix-List Syntax

This example limits updates sent to the peer to only be routing info for this specific matching subnet:

```
R1(config)# ip prefix-list UPDATE172 permit 172.16.0.0/16
```

```
R1(config)# router bgp 100
```

```
R1(config-router)# neighbor 192.168.1.1 remote-as 200
```

```
R1(config-router)# neighbor 192.168.1.1 prefix-list UPDATE172 out
```

Applies UPDATE172 to routing updates sent to 192.168.1.1. Permits update of 172.16.0.0/16, but has implicit deny at end of the list for others like 172.16.0.0/17 or 172.16.20/24

```
ip prefix-list list-name [seq seq-value] deny | permit network/cidr [ge ge-value] [le le-value]
```

Parameter	Description
<i>list-name</i>	The name of the prefix list.
seq	(Optional) Applies a sequence number to the entry being created or deleted.
<i>seq-value</i>	(Optional) Specifies the sequence number.
deny	Denies access to matching conditions.
permit	Permits access for matching conditions.
<i>network/cidr</i>	(Mandatory) The network number and length (in bits) of the netmask.
ge	(Optional) Applies <i>ge-value</i> to the range specified.
<i>ge-value</i>	(Optional) Specifies the beginning or "from" value of a range
le	(Optional) Applies <i>le-value</i> to the range specified.
<i>le-value</i>	(Optional) Specifies the end or "to" value of a range

- There is an **implicit deny** statement at the end of each prefix list.
- The range of sequence numbers that can be entered is from 1 to 4,294,967,294.
- A router tests for prefix list matches from the lowest sequence number to the highest.
- By numbering your **prefix-list** statements, you can add new entries at any point in the list.
- If no seq # is given, default is applied: 5 is applied to the first, next unnumbered entries are incremented by 5.

```
ip prefix-list NY_ROUTES permit 192.0.0.0/8 le 24
```

Permit routes with a netmask of up to 24 bits in 192.0.0.0/8 - No seq number given- gets the default 5

```
ip prefix-list NY_ROUTES deny 192.0.0.0/8 ge 25
```

Deny routes with netmask of 25 bits or greater in 192.0.0.0/8 - No seq num given- 10 is applied (+5)

```
ip prefix-list RENO permit 10.0.0.0/8 ge 16 le 24
```

Permit routes 10.0.0.0/8 with a netmask between 16 to 24 bits - No seq number given- gets the default 5

```
ip prefix-list HOUSTON seq 3 deny 0.0.0.0/0
```

Assigns a sequence number of 3 to this statement.

```
no ip prefix-list TORONTO seq 10
```

Removes sequence number 10 from the TORONTO list.

AS_PATH Access Lists

The AS_PATH attribute can be searched with regular expressions to match routing updates, and slap with an access-list label to filter or modify. Most of these should look familiar. They can also be tested with **show ip bgp**

- ^ Matches the beginning of the input string.
- \$ Matches the end of the input string.
- ^\$ Matches an empty string in the AS_PATH field (the local device's AS is blank, so this matches that)
- _ Matches a space, comma, left brace, right brace, beginning or end of an input string
- . Matches any single character.
- * Matches 0 or more single- or multiple-character patterns.

To find all subnets reachable via autonomous system 65002 (AS_PATH begins with 65002):

R1#**show ip bgp regexp ^65002_**

Network	Next Hop	Metric	LocPrf	Weight	Path
*>i172.16.0.0	192.168.28.1	100	0		65002 65003 i
* i172.24.0.0	192.168.28.1	100	0		65002 65003 65004 65005 i

show ip bgp regexp _65004\$... originating from autonomous system 65004 (AS_PATH ends with 65004):

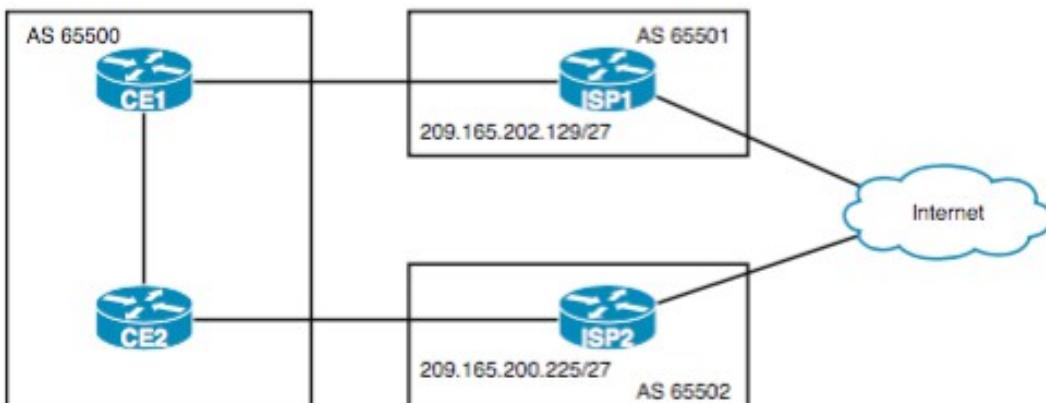
show ip bgp regexp ^65002_ ... reachable via autonomous system 65002 (AS_PATH begins with 65002):

show ip bgp regexp _65005_ ... transiting through autonomous system 65005 (AS_PATH contains 65005):

show ip bgp regexp 2150 Will match 2150, 12150 or 21507. This is where " " helps

show ip bgp ^\$ Originates from THIS autonomous system (AS_PATH is blank)

This simple example demonstrates using prefix lists and AS_PATH access-lists together. Notice how the AS_PATH list is referred to with the **filter-list** keyword. The first job is to allow CE1 and CE2 to only learn ISP routes with a mask greater than /15 (ge 16) and less than /25 (le 24). The second job is to ensure that AS 65000 does not become a transit autonomous system for ISP1 to reach ISP2 (and vice versa).



CE1 Configuration

ip prefix-list ISP1 permit 0.0.0 ge 16 le 24	Prefix list which only permits routes with a mask between 16 and 24
ip as-path access- list 1 permit ^\$	Creates AS_PATH ACL matching routes that only originate from within autonomous system 65500
router bgp 65000	
neighbor 209.165.202.129 prefix-list ISP1 in	Assigns ISP1 prefix list to neighbor 209.165.202.129 (ISP1) for all routes learned from that neighbor
neighbor 209.165.202.129 filter-list 1 out	Assigns AS_PATH ACL to neighbor 209.165.202.129 (ISP1) for all routes sent to that neighbor

CE2 Configuration

ip prefix-list ISP2 permit 0.0.0 ge 16 le 24	Creates a prefix list that only permits routes with a mask between 16 and 24
ip as-path access- list 1 permit ^\$	Creates an AS_PATH access list matching routes that only originate from within AS 65500
router bgp 65000	
neighbor 209.165.200.225 prefix-list ISP2 in	Assigns ISP2 prefix list to neighbor 209.165.200.225 (ISP2) for all routes learnt from that neighbor
neighbor 209.165.200.225 filter-list 1 out	Assigns AS_PATH ACL to neighbor 209.165.200.225 (ISP2) for all routes sent to that neighbor

Route Maps

This example uses a prefix-list to catch updates matching 172.16.10.0/24 and label with "AS400_ROUTES". Then a route-map is created so we can basically make a conditional statement that says, if it sees those, make a change to the weight attribute. If it doesn't match and falls through to match the second rule, set a different weight. This same mechanism can be used to make other changes, or specify what updates to use or drop.

Finally, at the end make the BGP process, add the neighbors and directs to check the route-map for the rules. Adding the keyword "in" refers to routing updates from 192.168.7.1, and the keyword "out" is used for the routing updates we send out 192.168.7.1

Houston(config)#ip prefix-list AS400_ROUTES permit 172.16.10.0/24

Creates a prefix list that matches the 172.16.10.0/24 network belonging to AS 400.

Houston(config)#route-map SETWEIGHT permit 10

Creates a route map called SETWEIGHT. A sequence number of 10 is assigned.

Houston(config-route-map)#match ip address prefix-list AS400_ROUTES

Specifies the condition under which policy routing is allowed, matching the AS400_ROUTES prefix list.

Houston(config-route-map)#set weight 200

Assigns a weight of 200 to any route update that meets the condition of prefix list AS400_ROUTES.

Houston(config-route-map)#route-map SETWEIGHT permit 20

Creates a second statement for the route map. A sequence number of 20 is assigned.

Houston(config-route-map)#set weight 100

Assign weight of 100 to all route updates/networks learned from outside (didn't match) AS400_ROUTES

Houston(config-route-map)#exit

Returns to global configuration mode.

Houston(config)#router bgp 300

Starts the BGP routing process.

Houston(config-router)#neighbor 192.168.7.1 route-map SETWEIGHT in

Uses the route map SETWEIGHT to filter all routes learned from neighbor 192.168.7.1.

Route-map can employ regular and extended ACLs, prefix-lists, and AS_PATH access-lists.

BGP subcommand	Commands to create	What can be matched
neighbor distribute-list (standard ACL)	access-list, ip access-list	Prefix, with WC mask
neighbor distribute-list (extended ACL)	access-list, ip access-list	Prefix and prefix length, with WC mask for each
neighbor prefix-list	ip prefix-list	Exact or "first N" bits of prefix, plus range of prefix lengths
neighbor filter-list	ip as-path access-list	AS_Path contents; all NLRI whose AS_Paths are matched considered to be a match
neighbor route-map	route-map	Prefix, prefix length, AS_Path, and/or any other PA matchable within a BGP route map

BGP Communities

BGP communities are used to group networking devices that share common properties, regardless of network, autonomous system, or any physical boundaries. In large networks applying a common routing policy through prefix lists or access lists requires individual peer statements on each networking device. Using the BGP community attribute BGP neighbors, with common routing policies, can implement inbound or outbound route filters based on the community tag rather than consult large lists of individual permit or deny statements. Consider a community a group of prefixes that should be treated the same way and an alternative to matching numerous prefixes using an access-list or prefix-list"

Communities are created with **set community aa : nn [additive | local-as | no-advertise | no-export]**. The aa:nn identifier is usually the AS followed by an arbitrary identifier (it would look something like 100:250) several can be entered on the same line. The options in brackets are for built in communities with specific rules built in.

set community aa : nn [additive | local-as | no-advertise | no-export]

additive - Adds to existing community (one or more keywords)

local-as (aka "well-known community) advertised to only peers in local AS or within a sub-AS of a confederation.

no-advertise - these are not advertised to any peer (internal or external).

no-export routes are like local-as but more strictly not advertised to external peers.

When declaring neighbors, you can share communities with it with **neighbor x.x.x.x send-community**. Here are some snippets demonstrating the use of communities:

```
ip bgp-community new-format  
access-list 101 permit ip host 6.6.6.0 host 255.255.255.0  
route-map Peer-R1 permit 10  
match ip address 101  
set community 100:300 109:02 33:40
```

```
ip community-list 1 permit 100:300  
route-map Peer-R3 permit 10  
match community 1  
set local-preference 130
```

ip community-list -- Creates a community list for BGP and control access to it.
match community -- Matches a BGP community.
set comm-list delete -- Removes communities from the community attribute of an inbound or outbound update.
show ip bgp community -- Displays routes that belong to specified BGP communities.

BGP Confederations

A BGP confederation divides our AS into sub-ASes to reduce the number of required IBGP peerings. Within a sub-AS we still require full-mesh IBGP but between these sub-ASes we use something that looks like EBGP but behaves like IBGP (called confederation BGP)

```
R2(config)#router bgp 24  
R2(config-router)#bgp confederation identifier 2  
R2(config-router)#bgp confederation peers 35  
R2(config-router)#neighbor 4.4.4.4 remote-as 24  
R2(config-router)#neighbor 4.4.4.4 update-source loopback 0  
R2(config-router)#neighbor 3.3.3.3 remote-as 35  
R2(config-router)#neighbor 3.3.3.3 update-source loopback 0  
R2(config-router)#neighbor 3.3.3.3 ebgp-multihop 2
```

When you start the BGP process you have to use the AS number of the sub-AS. Secondly, you have to use the **bgp confederation identifier** command to tell BGP what the main AS number is.

We also have to configure all other sub-AS numbers with the **bgp confederation peers** command, in this case that's only AS 35. R4 is in the same sub-as so you can configure this neighbor just like any other IBGP neighbor. R3 is a bit different though...since it's in another sub-AS we have to use the same rules as EBGP, that means configuring multihop if you are using loopbacks.

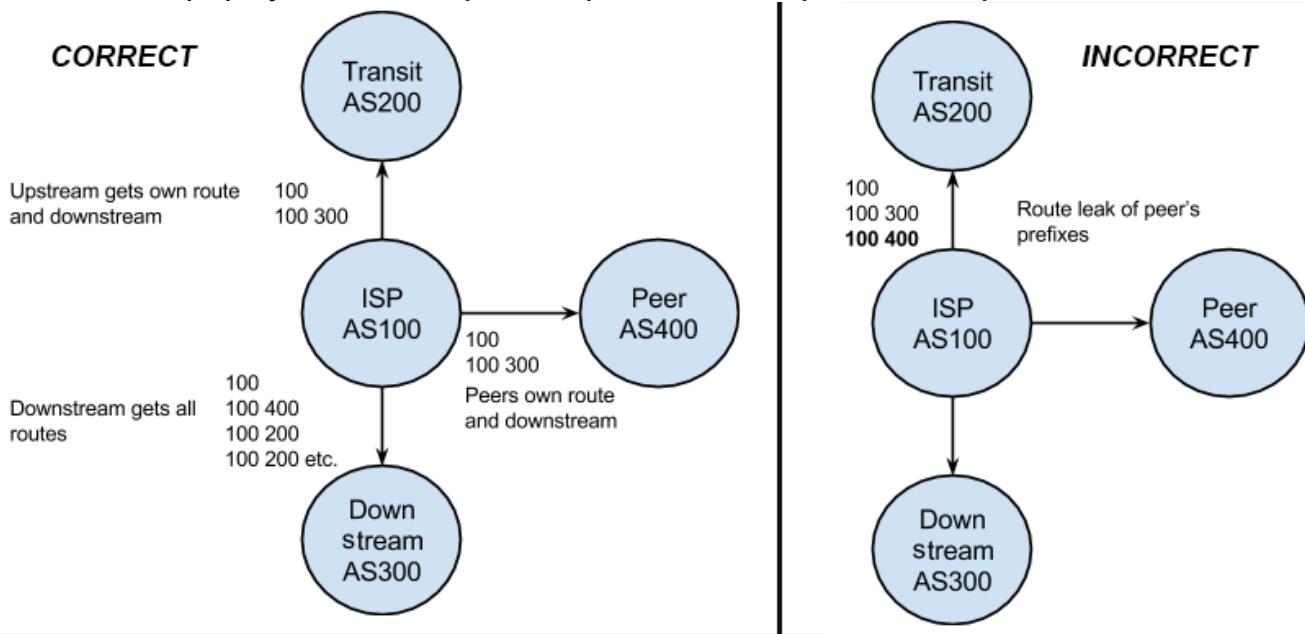
When you look up sh ip bgp x.x.x.x the route is tagged with either **confed-internal** (which means that it came from an IBGP router within the same sub-AS) or **confed-external**. With confed-external the sub-AS number simply appears in parentheses above the given route info. BGP confederations use an attribute called AS_CONFED_SET. This "confederation set" prepends the list with the sub-AS's. Generally speaking, when routes are sent to another AS, all the sub-AS numbers are removed

```
R5#show ip bgp 11.11.11.11  
BGP routing table entry for 11.11.11.11/32, version 6  
Paths: (2 available, best #2, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)  
  Advertised to update-groups:  
    2  
  (24) 1  
    192.168.12.1 (metric 3) from 4.4.4.4 (4.4.4.4)  
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, confed-external  
  (24) 1  
    192.168.12.1 (metric 3) from 3.3.3.3 (3.3.3.3)  
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, confed-internal, best
```

BGP Route Leaks and BGP Hijacking

- Route leaks and hijacks are where illegitimate prefixes/address blocks are wrongly propagated
- illegitimate advertisement of prefixes, blocks of IP addresses
 - propagate across networks and lead to incorrect or suboptimal routing.
 - Can happen from an AS originating a prefix that it does not actually own
 - Also happens when AS announces it can deliver traffic through a route that should not exist
 - Are particularly prone to propagation when
 - a more specific prefix is advertised (BGP prefers the most specific block of addresses)
 - a path is advertised that is shorter than the currently available paths (BGP prefers shortest AS Path).
 - Usually happen when BGP advertisements are not properly filtered using the no-export community.

Below, AS100 improperly announces the path of its peer AS400 to its upstream transit provider.



Remediation

- Maintain communication and work with administrators of neighboring AS'es to collaborate on fixes
- BGP-advertise routes more preferable than the leaked route (a more specific prefix length and/or shortest path)
- For example, if the problematic route advertises a /17, counter with advertising an /18
- Advertising a shorter path is not as effective
- Last resort: consider changing your prefixes entirely by changing DNS records. Only feasible if alternate locations are available (i.e., other data center). The TTL on DNS records also becomes an issue.

Preventative measures

- publish Route Origin Authorizations (ROAs) in the various regional Internet registries (RIRs)
- verifies that a given origin AS is authorized to announce its prefixes, (incl. max prefix lengths)
- networks using Resource Certification (RPKI) can validate the origin AS and verify routes legitimacy

Best practices: Proper route filtering uses a set of robust filtering rules, likely including:

- Filter out Bogon prefixes and routes with Bogon ASNs anywhere in the AS path. Reserved or unallocated IP spaces should never be advertised.
- Filter out routes with more than two Tier 1 ("transit-free") networks in the AS path. When more are present, at least one of the networks is providing transit to another.
- If you don't sell transit to large networks (like Tier 1 networks), filter out routes from them in the AS path. Use with a whitelist of prefixes that each of your customers may announce to you.
- Use peer locking- ask peers for all possible upstream networks, and only allow those as intermediate networks
(See Snijders NANOG67 - https://www.nanog.org/sites/default/files/Snijders_Everyday_Practical_Bgp.pdf)
- Use BGP Maximum-Prefix to set the maximum number of prefixes that can be announced from your peers. This helps during an episode of rapid propagation of problematic AS'es.

2008- Pakistan's ISPs hijacked YouTube's routes with a more specific prefix pointing to a null interface. The covered prefix was mistakenly leaked to the rest of the Internet, blocking YouTube for everyone else too. The practice of null routing commonly appears as a part of censorship efforts, including the Great Firewall of China (<https://blog.thousandeyes.com/deconstructing-great-firewall-china/>).

<http://dyn.com/blog/mitm-internet-hijacking/>

Bigger real-world examples: <https://blog.thousandeyes.com/finding-and-diagnosing-bgp-route-leaks/>

Setting up GRE with IPSEC for a Typical VPN

I made this from a transcription I made of Doug Suida's video at:
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2PtK8HgkRvM>

A followup that uses the same technique to set up DMVPN (Dynamic Multipoint VPN) is here:
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WExo1UvMpg0> - My summarization is on the next pages.

On network mapping it looks like these aren't directly connected but "sh cdp nei" only shows f/0/0 - doesn't show as a directly connected neighbor. Neighborship won't happen until you add to OSPF network 10.10.1.0 0.0.0.3 area 0

Outbound connection:

```
R1 ==> 162.27.193.128/30 ==>=====INTERNET======<== 45.12.153.200/30 <== R2  
Tunnel inside  
10.10.1.1 ==> Tunnel0 << -----> ===== 10.10.1.0/30 ===== < ----- >> Tunnel0 <== 10.10.1.2
```

Setting up the LANs, uplinks, and tunnel

```
Local: 192.168.1.0/24  
R1> int Loopback0  
R1> ip address 192.168.1.1  
R1> int f0/1  
R1> ip address 192.168.1.2  
R1> router ospf 123  
R1> network 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255 area 0  
      Uplink  
R1> int f0/0  
R1> ip address 162.27.193.130  
R1> exit  
      Tunnel  
R1> int tunnel0  
R1> tunnel source f0/0  
R1> tunnel destination 45.12.153.202  
R1> ip address 10.10.1.1 255.255.255.252
```

```
Local: 10.1.1.0/24  
R2> int Loopback0  
R2> ip address 10.1.1.1  
R2> int f0/1  
R2> ip address 10.1.1.2  
R2> router ospf 123  
R2> network 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 area 0  
      Uplink  
R2> int f0/0  
R2> ip address 45.12.153.202  
      Tunnel  
R2> int tunnel0  
R2> tunnel source f0/0  
R2> tunnel destination 162.27.193.130  
R2> ip address 10.10.1.2 255.255.255.252  
R2>
```

These are also added on both routers but not needed

```
> tunnel path-mtu-discovery  
> ip ospf mtu-ignore
```

The first one gets the tunnel to do its own MTU discovery since it is over the internet

The second one is to do the same with OSPF to make sure it stays neat

You can put in a keepalive on the tunnel but don't need it since it's a logical interface

If you are skiddish about OSPF go ahead.

On OSPF: no tunnel = no multicast and no neighborship

So now, after testing and making sure it's all working, we can add standard VPN mechanisms with IPSEC.
You might otherwise have many policies and transform sets but here just one.

1. Define traffic to be encrypted

R1> ip access-list extended MY-IPSEC-TRAFFIC

R1> remark VPN Traffic

R1> permit gre host 162.27.193.130 host 45.12.153.202
You'll do the same on R2 with the address reversed

2. Set up Phase I, with a preshared key rather than a certificate

R1> crypto isakmp policy 1

R1> authentication pre-share

that is where you'd put cert-based rsa-encr, rsa-sig

R1> encryption aes 128

other options 3des des aes and 128, 192, 256

R1> hash sha

you can also choose to put md5

R1> group 2

choose DH group 1, 2 or 5

R1> lifetime 86400

60-86400 seconds (86400 sec = 1 day, is the default)

R1> crypto isakmp key 0 mypassword address 45.12.153.202

If the password you are giving here is encrypted or not: 0 is plaintext, 6 is encrypt

3. Set up Phase II - make the IPSEC transform set

R1> crypto ipsec transform-set TRANSFM-TUN esp-aes 128 esp-sha-hmac

There are tons of transforms to use. The above are the defaults.

R1> mode tunnel

Or transport

4. Create crypto-map

R1> crypto map CRYPTOMAPPY 1 ipsec-isakmp

R1(config-cryptomap)> description DESC to R2

R1(config-cryptomap)> match address MY-IPSEC-TRAFFIC

Name of the ACL made in step 1

5. Apply to interfaces

R1> set peer 45.12.153.202

R1> set transform-set TRANSFM-TUN

R1> int f0/0

R1> crypto map CRYPTOMAPPY

R1> int tunnel 0

R1> crypto map CRYPTOMAPPY
 Test

R1> show crypto ipsec sa

Show stats of # encrypted/ decrypted - tells us if it really being encrypted

If you do a sh run config you won't see a lot of the stuff that were used here which were default settings

Valid Encryption Methods

esp-des

esp-3des (default)

esp-aes (128-bit encryption)

esp-aes-192

esp-aes-256

esp-null

Valid Authentication Methods

esp-md5-hmac

esp-sha-hmac (default)

DMVPN - Dynamic Multipoint VPN with mGRE (multipoint GRE), IPsec and NHRP

5 sites (routers), full mesh

R1 has individual tunnels to R2, R3, R4, and R5, and each of those routers have similar tunnels to each other.

10 tunnels? DMVPN can automate the process. Sort of a hub and spoke configuration mashed in with a frame relay-style network with one hub site (not full mesh FR). With DMVPN, it turns out you don't have to configure all the tunnels after doing those coming out of R1. Those tunnels among the "spokes" routers are built dynamically as-needed by the DMVPN configuration.

If some host off of R4 needs something off of the network hosted by R2, it can dynamically create the tunnel so it can be used, wait for it to time out, and then tear it down again. Say R4 queries the hub router (R1), which provides the next hop information it needs to build the tunnel; it does so, and when they finish tear the tunnel down. In this scenario you don't need anything but interior routing protocols

On routing, let's say R3 adds a network and sends out an advertising update. The update only goes to the hub router- not the others, and it's the hub router that sends the update to the others. Sort of like a NBMA setup, and have to turn off split horizon, add Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP), etc. Also- participant routers are never neighbors with any other router than the "hub" router, even when a tunnel is created. R1 is depended on for information needed to build the tunnels and propagate the routing updates, and no other participating router can communicate with another without this "hub" router as its resource.

Here we set up R1, then just R2 and R3 - it will become apparent after one spoke is done, that it's a replication.

After setting up the "hub router" and the first spoke router, the rest of the spoke routers can use the same stuff with only the tunnel and gateway IPs needing to be set, and EIGRP tuned on.

Overview: EIGRP 10 with:

R1 - f0/0 - 54.45.12.1 to default GW .2/30 - internal network (loopback): 192.168.17.0/24 DMVPN IP: 192.168.1.1

R2 - f0/0 - 54.45.12.5 to 6/30 - internal network (loopback): 192.168.200.0/24 DMVPN IP: 192.168.1.12

R3 - f0/0 - 54.45.12.9 to 10/30 - internal network (loopback): 10.1.1.0/24 DMVPN IP: 192.168.1.3

Set up all of this before starting the exercise. Ping-test all the links and you are ready:

Differences from previous: we create a transform, no cryptomap with ACL. Create ipsec profile instead

1. Set ISAKMP policy and define pre-shared key

R1> crypto isakmp policy 10

R1> authentication pre-share

R1> encryption aes 192

R1> hash md5

R1> group 2

R1> crypto isakmp key 0 ISAKKEY address 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 <---said isakey was name - no password?

Here we don't have a specific IP address like the other example. Put ANY with matching key (with 0's)

2. Phase II - make the IPSEC transform set

R1> crypto ipsec transform-set DMVPN-TRANSFM esp-aes 192 esp-md5-hmac

3. Make a profile (instead of the cryptomap for single tunnel)

R1> ipsec profile DMVPN-PROFILE

R1(ipsec profile)> set security-association lifetime seconds 120

120 sec is the minimum. Is lifetime before tunnel gets torn down!

R1(ipsec profile)> set transform-set DMVPN-TRANSFM

DONE WITH IPSEC

Tunnel

R1> int tunnel0

R1> ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0

R1> no ip redirects

MTU for encryption on top of packets

R1> ip mtu 1440

Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) stuff

R1> ip nhrp authentication ISAKKEY

R1> ip nhrp network-id 1

```
##### Allow multicast protocols to use dynamic tunnels, shut off split horizon and next-hop-self
R1> ip nhrp map multicast dynamic
R1> no ip split-horizon eigrp 10
R1> no next-hop-self
R1> tunnel source fastEthernet 0/0
R1> tunnel mode gre multipoint
R1> tunnel key 0
R1> tunnel protect profile DMVPN-PROFILE
R!> router eigrp 10
R1> network 192.168.1.0
```

So it should be understood at this point:

R2 and R3 both use tunnel0 to get to R1; tunnel0 goes from R2 to R3. It is the SAME tunnel for ALL connected routers and that is what multipoint GRE provides to us. Very much like FR- here one tunnel for the whole mess instead of 5, or 10 tunnels.

R2 - needs the same IPSEC config we just did. On R1, do a sh running config and copy ipsec material. Just copy and paste it into the R2 command line after config t is entered. Done.

Like the IPSEC config, the tunnel config is almost the same... don't copy and paste this quite yet- this is the configuration that is going to be copied, pasted into all the other spoke routers.

```
R2> int tunnel0
R2> ip address 192.168.1.2 255.255.255.0
R2> no ip redirects
R2> ip mtu 1440
R2> ip nhrp authentication ISAKKEY
R2> ip nhrp map multicast dynamic
##### Set the hub for next hop info and map with it's gateway address:
R2> ip nhrp nhs 192.168.1.1
R2> ip nhrp map 192.168.1.1 54.45.12.1
R2> ip nhrp map multicast 54.45.12.1
R2> ip nhrp network-id 1
R2> tunnel source fastEthernet 0/0
R2> tunnel mode gre multipoint
R2> tunnel key 0
R2> tunnel protection profile DMVPN-PROFILE
R2> router eigrp 10
R2> network 192.168.1.0
```

Other spokes will be the same as R2 except for the router's ip address:

```
##### config t and copy IPSEC info from sh running config on R2, paste.
R3> int tunnel0
```

```
R3> ip address 192.168.1.3 255.255.255.0
```

```
##### Copy and paste the rest of the tunnel from first running config here, then make EIGRP declaration:
```

```
R3> router eigrp 10
```

```
R3> network 192.168.1.0
```

That's all. Do this for as many spokes as you want and it "just works"

```
sh crypto isakmp sa -- this is really just to show phase 1 info - does show tunnel is up or not
sh crypto ipsec sa -- this is for actual tunnel stats - shows traffic data and encryption %'s
```

So, what happens when the "hub" goes down? Is there a way to have failover/redundancy? It turns out, when naming NHS's you're not limited to 1 IP addy- you just need map commands for all added. This addresses the SPOF problem.

TCP Ports - Interactions and Scanning

SYN	Synchronize. Initiates a connection between hosts.
ACK	Acknowledge. Established connection between hosts.
PSH	Push. System is forwarding buffered data.
URG	Urgent. Data in packets must be processed quickly.
FIN	Finish. No more transmissions.
RST	Reset. Resets the connection.

TCP Connect and SYN stealth (aka half-open) scans

TCP connect (-sT) is the most reliable scan type but also the noisiest and most detectable since it attempts the standard 3-way TCP handshake to a port. If that port is open and unfiltered, it will think there is a connection attempt it is waiting for. When a SYN stealth scan (-sS) receives an ACK response it will shoot back a RST to slam the connection shut. It is also gives more clear results than inverse scans. To Nmap, SYN/ACK means port is open, RST means port is closed and no response (even on retrying) or ICMP back means it is filtered en route.

Packet fragmentation can evade IDS packet filtering and detection. A stealth SYN can be used in a way that splits the TCP header over several IP packets to mess with firewalls. Some firewalls may have rule sets that block IP fragmentation queues, but might not due to the adverse effect on network performance

Example: nmap -sS -T4(time delay) -A -f -v 192.168.0.2

Inverse TCP Flag scanning sends packets with various TCP flags (or no flags) enabled.

- When the port is open (or firewall-filtered), no response comes from the host.
- When the port is closed, a RST/ACK is received from the target host.

It's often said these are called inverted since responses are sent back only by closed ports. Inverse TCP scans are named for the flags they use, NMap has -sF (FIN scan, with only the FIN flag set), -sN (Null scan with no flags set) and -sX for an Xmas scan setting all three FIN, URG, PUSH flags. Nmap doesn't have a URG and PSH similar individual shortcut (like --flag URG), Hping has -U and -P, but these don't yield different results than other inverse scans (NUL, FIN and Xmas all you really need). A maimon scan sends packets with both the FIN and ACK flags set. It was considered more useful but not in modern times.

NUL, FIN and Xmas scans: if we get a RST, we know the port is closed. If it's not closed, the remote host shouldn't respond so it's either open or filtered

Caveats: According to RFC 793, a RST/ACK packet must be sent for connection reset, when the port is closed on host side. RFC 793 is completely ignored in Windows, so you won't get a RST/ACK response when trying to interact with the closed port. So, is only effective when target is not a Windows OS. If an "ICMP unreachable" is returned Nmap considers the port firewall-filtered. These might get through some firewalls (FIN most likely), and sometimes no response doesn't mean a port is open, since instead the packet was dropped by the firewall.

Finally, for ALL types of scans, just because a method can pass through a firewall does NOT necessarily mean it is slipping through undetected!

ACK scans (are not considered inverse)

Sent with just the ACK flag set, these never determines ports are closed or open (or even open/filtered). It is used to map out firewall rulesets, determining whether they are stateful or not and which ports are filtered, which usually means running other scans and cross-referencing the results. The simplest usage shown below, determines getting a **RST back means "unfiltered"** (RFC 793 again), and either an ICMP unreachable or no result at all is "filtered" (firewalls that block usually make no response or send back an ICMP destination unreachable)

```
# nmap -sA -T4 scanme.nmap.org
Not shown: 994 filtered ports
22/tcp unfiltered ssh
25/tcp unfiltered smtp ...
```

Forbidding anything but outbound connections is fine, but blocking ACK packets without state info doesn't tell which side started the connection. To block unsolicited ACK packets and allow packets belonging to legitimate connections, firewalls must stateful. Either way, the stateless approach is still quite common (netfilter/iptables, basic zone-based, etc). Cross-reference a SYN scan below shows us both getting responses; SYN scan says 98/100 ports are filtered, ACK says all are filtered (all getting RST back). This is a stateless use of "iptables -A INPUT -m multiport -p tcp --destination-port 22,80 -j ACCEPT" on the firewall.

```
# nmap -sS -p1-100 -T4 para
Not shown: 98 filtered ports
22/tcp open  ssh
80/tcp closed http
Nmap done: 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 3.81 seconds
```

```
# nmap -sA -p1-100 -T4 para
All 100 scanned ports on para (192.168.10.191) are: unfiltered
```

Nmap done: 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 0.70 seconds

The ACK scan shows some packets are probably reaching the destination host- firewall forgery is always possible. Other scan types, such as FIN scan, may even be able to determine which ports are open and thus infer the purpose of the hosts. While you may not be able to establish TCP connections to those ports, they can be useful for determining which IP addresses are in use, OS detection tests, certain IP ID shenanigans, and as a channel for tunneling commands to rootkits installed on those machines. Such hosts may be useful as zombies for an IP ID idle scan.

Two ways of interpreting other info from ACK scans can be more revealing: checking the time-to-live (TTL) field and the WINDOW field of received packets

It doesn't tell us if a port is open or closed, but it does try to tell us if the firewall is stateful (keeps tracks of connections) or not (probably just denies incoming SYN packets).

If the firewall is non-stateful and just drops SYN packets, an ACK will get in because it looks like a reply to something from the other side.

If an open OR closed port receives an unexpected ACK, it should send a RST back.

So if we get a RST back, then it means the firewall is non-stateful (or there's just not one in place). If we don't get a response, or some ICMP unreachable is sent, it's most likely filtered.

TTL-Base Analysis:

TTL value can be used as a marker of how many systems the packet has hopped through

Below, the value on the RST packets returned by port 22 is 50, whereas the other ports return a value of 80. This suggests that port 22 is open on the target host because the TTL value returned is smaller than the TTL boundary value of 64*.

1: host 192.168.0.12 port 21: F:RST TTL:80 WIN:0

2: host 192.168.0.12 port 22: F:RST TTL:50 WIN:0

The *firewalk* assessment tool is similar <http://www.packetfactory.net/projects/firewalk/>.

Window-based Analysis:

If window field has non-zero value then port is open, no response, presumed filtered

1: host 192.168.0.20 port 22: F:RST -> ttl: 64 win: 512

2: host 192.168.0.20 port 23: F:RST -> ttl: 64 win: 0

The advantage of using ACK flag probe scanning is detection is difficult (for both IDS and host-based systems). The disadvantage is it relies on TCP/IP stack implementation bugs, which are prominent in BSD-derived systems but not in many other modern platforms.

hping3 -A 72.14.207.99 -p 80 -c 1

nmap -sW

Some systems use a positive Window size for open ports, and zero for closed. Fewer systems do the exact opposite. If you scan and get tons of open ports and just a few closed ones, chances are it's the opposite. And some systems don't do either, so you can't always trust it.

IDLE scan/ IP ID header scan - IP ID (IP fragment ID number)

Sends a spoofed source address to a computer to find out what services are available for complete blind scanning of a remote host. This is accomplished by spoofing another computer's IP address. No packet is send from your own IP address; instead, another host is used to scan the remote host and determine the open ports. This is done by expecting the sequence number of the zombie host and if the remote host checks the IP of the scanning party, the IP of the zombie machine will show up. You don't need access to the zombie machine to do any of this.

As noted, to determine if port is open, SYN scan full or stealth, get back an RST if closed, SYNACK if open.

Consider:

- An unsolicited SYNACK is responded to with a RST; An unsolicited RST will be ignored
- Each IP packet has a fragment ID (IPID), incremented for each sent. Check to get # of packets sent since probe

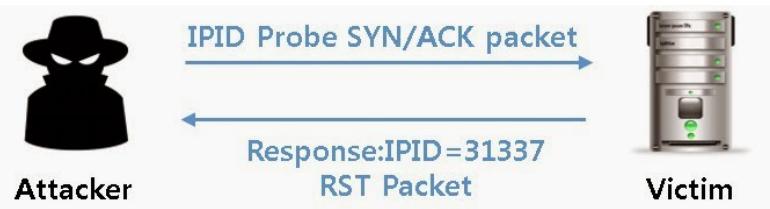
Step 1) Send an unsolicited SYNACK to the target to get a RST containing IP ID (say it's 31337)

Step 2) Spoof the IP address of your zombie machine, and send a SYN packet to the target (port 80)

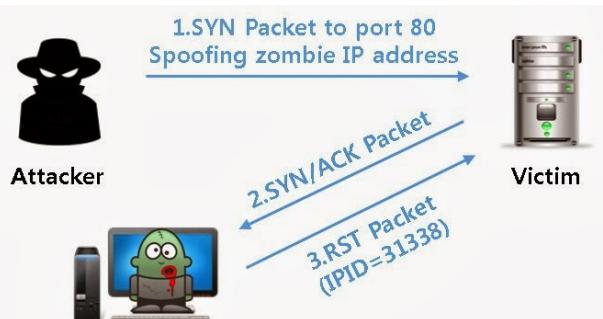
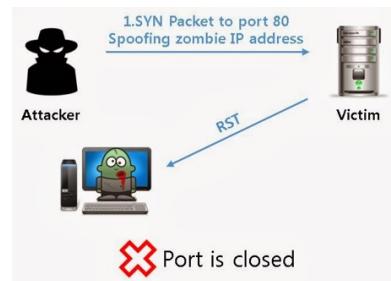
- If the port is open, the target will send a SYNACK to the zombie and it will shoot a RST back to the target. (IP ID predicted is 31338)

- If the port is closed, the target will send a RST to the zombie host, and it won't respond

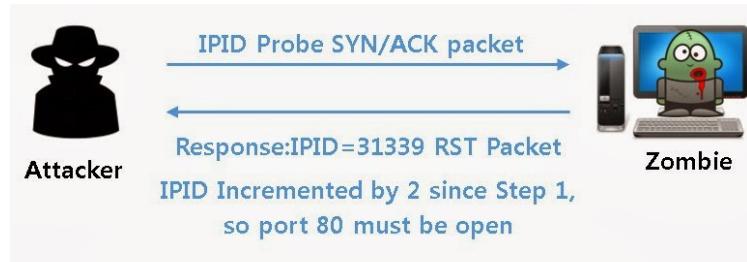
Step 3) Probe the target again with another SYNACK. The IP ID should have incremented by 2 from the last RST obtained in step 1 if the tested port on the target is open.



① IPID Probe Request and Response



② Target Response to spoofed SYN Request when Port is open



③ IPID Probe Request and Response

Port is open

```
nmap -Pn -p- -sI www.host123.com www.host345.com
Idlescan using zombie www.host123.com (192.130.18.124:80); Class: Incremental
Nmap scan report for 198.182.30.30.110
(the 40321 ports scanned but not shown below are in the state: closed)
Port      State      Service
21/tcp    open       ftp
25/tcp    open       smtp
80/tcp    open       http
Nmap done: 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 1931.23 seconds
```

ICMP Echo scanning/List scan

ICMP echo scanning is used to discover live machines by pinging all the machines in the target network. ICMP probes sent to the broadcast or network address are relayed to all the host addresses in the subnet. The live systems will send ICMP echo reply message to the source of ICMP echo probe.

```
nmap -P 192.168.0.0/24 --OR-- nmap -sn 192.168.0.2 --OR-- nmap -sL -v 192.168.2.5
```

UDP Scanning -sUV

Sends UDP packets to each target port, often empty but some commonly known port services need a specific payload, so Nmap tries add it in (the -V option checks Nmap's database). Some listening applications will still discard empty packets as invalid, firewalls also drop packets without responding, and UDP might just drop packets or time out. So, a UDP response means it is open, no response can be either open or filtered (can't tell!). Nmap running with application version detection (-sUV) helps there a bit.

If you get a UDP response back, it's open

If the port is closed, it will likely shoot back an ICMP port unreachable (type 3/code 3)

If it is another ICMP unreachable error (type 3, code 1, 2, 9, 10, or 13) it's likely filtered.

Some OSs limit the frequency of ICMP Port Unreachable messages, Nmap adjusts accordingly. Microsoft-based OSs do not usually implement any type of ICMP rate limiting. Not usually useful for most types of attack, but it can reveal information about some exploitable services (DHCP, SNMP, NFS, etc). Malware often uses UDP

```
nmap -sU -v 192.168.0.2
```

Some flags available in Nmap (see <https://nmap.org/book/man-briefoptions.html>)

-sT	TCP connect scan	-sR	RPC scan	-oN	Normal output
-sS	SYN scan	-sL	List/DNS scan	-oX	XML output
-sF	FIN scan	-sI	Idle scan	-oG	Greppable output
-sX	XMAS tree scan	-Po	Don't ping	-oA	All output
-sN	Null scan	-PT	TCP ping	-T Paranoid	Serial scan; 300 sec between scans
-sP	Ping scan	-PS	SYN ping	-T Sneaky	Serial scan; 15 sec between scans
-sU	UDP scan	-PI	ICMP ping	-T Polite	Serial scan; .4 sec between scans
-sO	Protocol scan	-PB	TCP and ICMP ping	-T Normal	Parallel scan
-sA	ACK scan	-PB	ICMP timestamp	-T Aggressive	Parallel, 300 sec timeout, 1.25 sec/probe
-sW	Windows scan	-PM	ICMP netmask	-T Insane	Parallel, 75 sec timeout, 0.3 sec/probe

IP PROTOCOL SCAN

Looks for supported IP protocols rather than open ports; sends raw IP packets with different values in the protocol field of the header. Instead of looking for "ICMP Port Unreachable", it looks for ICMP Protocol Unreachables to tell if it's unsupported (somewhat "closed"). If we get a response back in the same protocol, it's supported (somewhat "open"). If we get some different ICMP unreachable, it's probably filtered. If we don't get anything back, it's either open (and didn't reply) or filtered.

```
# nmap -sO 192.168.10.1
# hping3 -c 1 --rawip --ipproto 0 192.168.10.1
# hping3 -c 1 --icmp 192.168.10.1
# hping3 -c 1 --rawip --ipproto 2 192.168.10.1
```

FTP bounce scanning

Hosts running outdated FTP services can relay numerous TCP attacks, including port scanning. There is a flaw in the way many FTP servers handle connections using the PORT command (see RFC 959 or technical description) that allows data to be sent to user-specified hosts and ports. In their default configurations, the FTP services running on the following older Unix-based platforms are affected

The FTP bounce attack can have a far more devastating effect if a writable directory exists because a series of commands or other data can be entered into a file and then relayed via the PORT command to a specified port of a target host. For example, someone can upload a spam email message to a vulnerable FTP server and then send this email message to the SMTP port of a target mail server. Figure 4-9 shows the parties involved in FTP bounce scanning.

1. The attacker connects to the FTP control port (TCP port 21) of the vulnerable FTP server that she is going to bounce her attack through and enters passive mode, forcing the FTP server to send data to a specific port of a specific host:

QUOTE PASV

```
227 Entering Passive Mode (64,12,168,246,56,185).
```

2. A PORT command is issued, with an argument passed to the FTP service telling it to attempt a connection to a specific TCP port on the target server; for example, TCP port 23 of 144.51.17.230:

```
PORT 144,51,17,230,0,23
```

```
200 PORT command successful.
```

3. After issuing the PORT command, a LIST command is sent. The FTP server then attempts to create a connection with the target host defined in the PORT command issued previously:
LIST

```
150 Opening ASCII mode data connection for file list
```

```
226 Transfer complete.
```

If a 226 response is seen, then the port on the target host is open. If, however, a 425 response is seen, the connection has been refused:

LIST

```
425 Can't build data connection: Connection refused
```

Nmap supports FTP bounce port scanning with the -P0 and -b flags used in the following manner:

```
nmap -P0 -b username:password@ftp-server:port <target host>
```

The -P0 flag must be used to suppress pinging of the target host, as it may not be accessible from your location (e.g., if you are bouncing through a multihomed FTP server). Also, you may not want your source IP address to appear in logs at the target site.

Proxy bounce scanning

Attackers bounce TCP attacks through open proxy servers. Depending on the level of poor configuration, the server will sometimes allow a full-blown TCP port scan to be relayed. Using proxy servers to perform bounce port scanning in this fashion is often time-consuming, so many attackers prefer to abuse open proxy servers more efficiently by bouncing actual attacks through to target networks.

ppscan.c, a publicly available Unix-based tool to bounce port scans, can be found in source form at:

<http://examples.oreilly.com/networksa/tools/ppscan.c> <http://www.phreak.org/archives/exploits/unix/network-scanners/ppscan.c>

(NMAP) When scanning hardened environments, you should use the -Pn flag to force scanning of each address within scope. A slower timing policy (such as -T2) is also useful, as an aggressive policy will trigger SYN flood protection by firewalls

SYN probes - four response variants: a packet with SYN/ACK flags indicating an open port, RST/ACK denoting closed, no response or an ICMP type 3 message implying a filter

This runs three Nmap scans to identify accessible hosts across TCP, SCTP, and UDP. Optionally, load a list of targets into Nmap from a file using the -iL flag.

```
nmap -T4 -Pn -v -n -sS -F -oG /tmp/tcp.gnmap 192.168.0.0/24  
nmap -T4 -Pn -v -n -sY -F -oG /tmp/sctp.gnmap 192.168.0.0/24  
nmap -T4 -Pn -v -n -sU -p53,111,123,137,161,500 -oG /tmp/udp.gnmap 192.168.0.0/24
```

These scans generate output in /tmp with gnmap file extensions. UDP results may contain false positives. If the UDP dataset looks noisy (i.e. all the hosts are reporting to have open ports), then simply disregard it. Once you're happy with the contents of these files, use grep and awk to generate a refined list of targets, as follows:

```
grep open /tmp/*.gnmap | awk '{print $2}' | sort | uniq > /tmp/targets.txt
```

This list should then be fed into four subsequent scans: A fast TCP scan of common services

```
nmap -T4 -Pn -v --open -sS -A -oA tcp_fast -iL /tmp/targets.txt
```

A TCP scan of all ports:

```
nmap -T4 -Pn -v --open -sS -A -p0-65535 -oA tcp_full -iL /tmp/targets.txt
```

An SCTP scan of all ports:

```
nmap -T4 -Pn -v --open -sY -p0-65535 -oA sctp -iL /tmp/targets.txt
```

A UDP scan of common services:

```
nmap -T3 -Pn -v --open -sU -oA udp -iL /tmp/targets.txt
```

The -oA flag will generate multiple output files for each scan type, including a gnmap file that you can easily parse, and a full text file (i.e. tcp_fast.nmap) that is human-readable. These scanning modes do not perform service fingerprinting or deep analysis of the exposed network services

Same procedure for IPv6 - first sweeping IPv6 address space for hosts running common network services, and then perform full scanning of that subset). When TCP sweeping large IPv6 networks, I recommend reducing the port list to increase speed, from -F (100 common ports) to -p22,25,53,80,111,139,443.

Upon preparing a list of targets (e.g. /tmp/targets.txt) from host discovery and sweeping, run the same four scans as before, using the -6 flag to perform the scanning over IPv6:

```
nmap -6 -T4 -Pn -v --open -sS -A -oA ipv6_tcp_fast -iL /tmp/targets.txt  
nmap -6 -T4 -Pn -v --open -sS -A -p0-65535 -oA ipv6_tcp_full -iL /tmp/targets.txt  
nmap -6 -T4 -Pn -v --open -sY -p0-65535 -oA ipv6_sctp -iL /tmp/targets.txt  
nmap -6 -T3 -Pn -v --open -sU -oA ipv6_udp -iL /tmp/targets.txt
```

SCTP

Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) is a transport protocol that sits alongside TCP and UDP. Intended to provide transport of telephony data over IP, the protocol duplicates many of the reliability features of SS7, and underpins a larger family of protocols known as SIGTRAN. SCTP is supported by operating systems including IBM AIX, Oracle Solaris, HP-UX, Linux, Cisco IOS, and VxWorks.

SCTP chunk types

ID	Value	Description
0	DATA	Payload data
1	INIT	Initiation
2	INIT ACK	Initiation acknowledgement
3	SACK	Selective acknowledgement
4	HEARTBEAT	Heartbeat request
5	HEARTBEAT ACK	Heartbeat acknowledgement
6	ABORT	Abort
7	SHUTDOWN	Shutdown
8	SHUTDOWN ACK	Shutdown acknowledgement
9	ERROR	Operation error
10	COOKIE ECHO	State cookie
11	COOKIE ACK	Cookie acknowledgement
12	ECNE	Explicit congestion notification echo
13	CWR	Congestion window reduced
14	SHUTDOWN COMPLETE	Shutdown complete

Tools such as Nmap and SING don't identify these responses from private addresses (behind NAT), as low-level stateful analysis of the traffic flowing into and out of a network is required. A quick and simple example of this behavior can be seen in the ISS BlackICE personal firewall event log in Figure 4-1 as a simple ICMP ping sweep is performed.

It is beneficial to run a network sniffer such as Ethereal or tcpdump during testing to pick up on unsolicited ICMP responses, including “ICMP TTL exceeded” (type 11 code 0) messages, indicating a routing loop, and “ICMP administratively prohibited” (type 3 code 13) messages, indicating an ACL in use on a router or firewall.

OS Fingerprinting Using ICMP

Ofir Arkin’s Xprobe2 utility performs OS fingerprinting primarily by analyzing responses to ICMP probes.

Another SYN port scanner worth mentioning is Scanrand, a component of the Paketto Keiretsu suite. Paketto Keiretsu contains a number of useful networking utilities that are available at <http://www.doxpara.com/read.php/code/paketto.html>. For Windows, Foundstone’s SuperScan is an excellent port scanning utility with good functionality, including banner grabbing. SuperScan is available from <http://examples.oreilly.com/networksa/tools/superscan4.zip>

Scanrand is well designed, with distinct SYN probing and background listening components that allow for very fast scanning. Inverse SYN cookies (using SHA1) tag out-going probe packets, so that false positive results become nonexistent, as the listening component only registers responses with the correct SYN cookies. Scanrand is much faster than bulkier scanners, such as Nmap.

Unicornscan (<http://www.unicornscan.org>) is another tool that performs fast half-open scanning. It has some unique and very useful features, and it is recommended for advanced users.

(UDP payload scan) against the 10.3.0.1 candidate within my environment, results are as follows:

```
root@kali:~# unicornscan -mU 10.3.0.1
UDP open domain[ 53] from 10.3.0.1 ttl 128
UDP open netbios-ns[ 137] from 10.3.0.1 ttl 128
```

UDP scanning results across tools may vary. Nmap provides a comprehensive option with -sV, but testing of a single host using the -F option (scanning 100 ports) takes around 10 minutes to complete.

Using malformed TCP flags to probe a target is known as an inverted technique because responses are sent back only by closed ports. RFC 793 states that if a port is closed on a host, an RST/ACK packet should be sent to reset the connection. To take advantage of this feature, attackers send TCP probe packets with various TCP flags set.

Vscan is another Windows tool you can use to perform inverse TCP flag scanning. The utility doesn’t require installation of WinPcap network drivers; instead it uses raw sockets within Winsock 2 (present in Windows itself). Vscan is available from <http://examples.oreilly.com/networksa/tools/vscan.zip>.

SING (Send ICMP Nasty Garbage) - <http://sourceforge.net/projects/sing>

Ability to transmit and receive spoofed packets, send MAC-spoofed packets, and support the transmission of many other message types, including ICMP address mask, timestamp, and information requests, as well as router solicitation and router advertisement messages

ICMPScan - <http://www.bindshell.net/tools/icmpscan>

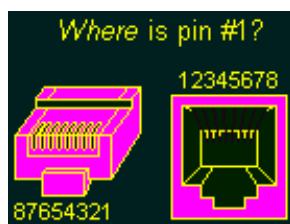
Bulk scanner derived from Nmap that sends type 8, 13, 15, and 17 ICMP; can process inbound responses by placing the network interface into promiscuous mode, thereby identifying internal IP addresses and machines that respond from probes sent to subnet network and broadcast addresses. Because ICMP is a connectionless protocol, it is best practice to resend each probe (using -r 1) and set the timeout to 500 milliseconds (using -t 500). We also set the tool to listen in promiscuous mode for unsolicited responses (using the -c flag).

Category 5/ 6, UTP (Unshielded Twisted Pair); RJ-45 8P8C (8 position, 8 contact) connector

Twisting of the 2 wires in each of the 4 pairs minimizes interference (one is insulated by the other).

Each pair also even have a different "twist rate" to minimize interference between them. Each pair is transmit +/-, receive +/-.

Shielded twisted pair surrounds each pair in metal shielding and uses a grounding wire.



The only difference between T568A and T568B wiring standards is that pairs 2 and 3 (orange and green) are swapped. Both configurations wire the pins "straight through", i.e., pins 1 through 8 on one end are connected to pins 1 through 8 on the other end.

As you can see below, a crossover cable for both T568A and T568B is ALMOST T568A wiring on one end and T568B on the other- making it easy to remember- HOWEVER- notice that pins 7 and 8 also switch to pins 4 and 5 (below, blue and brown switch places, as well as green and orange).

So crossover is 1 and 2 to 3 and 6, and 4 and 5 to 7 and 8

Straight-Through Ethernet Cable Pin Out for T568B

RJ45 Pin #	Wire Color	10/100Base-TX Signal	1000Base-T Signal
1	White/Orange	Transmit+	BI_DA+
2	Orange	Transmit-	BI_DA-
3	White/Green	Receive+	BI_DB+
4	Blue	Unused	BI_DC+
5	White/Blue	Unused	BI_DC-
6	Green	Receive-	BI_DB-
7	White/Brown	Unused	BI_DD+
8	Brown	Unused	BI_DD-

Straight-Through and PoE Ethernet Cable Pin Out for T568A

RJ45 Pin #	Wire Color	Wire Diagram	10/100Base-TX Signal	PoE
1	White/Green		Transmit+	Mode A +
2	Green		Transmit-	Mode A +
3	White/Orange		Receive+	Mode A -
4	Blue		Unused	Mode B +
5	White/Blue		Unused	Mode B +
6	Orange		Receive-	Mode A -
7	White/Brown		Unused	Mode B -
8	Brown		Unused	Mode B -

Crossover Cable Pin Outs for T568B

Pin # (END 1)	Wire Color	Diagram End #1	Pin # (END 2)	Wire Color	Diagram End #2
1	White/Orange		1	White/Green	
2	Orange		2	Green	
3	White/Green		3	White/Orange	
4	Blue		4	White/Brown	
5	White/Blue		5	Brown	
6	Green		6	Orange	
7	White/Brown		7	Blue	
8	Brown		8	White/Blue	

One other type of wiring is a rollover/ console cable for switch and routers using the EIA-TIA 232 serial COM port. It is just straight-through in reverse order- picture cutting the end off a straight-through cable, turn it over, and put on a new connector. Often USB to serial converter and rollover cables are used.

Crossover cables are necessary when endpoints transmit on the same pin pair, they need to be crossed for compatibility. Use crossover for "like devices" not unlike:

Transmits on Pins 1,2: workstation NICs, routers, cabled non-USB WAPs

Transmits on Pins 3,6: switches and hubs

Some devices have auto-MDIX to autosense cable type and make the link work. Often not present.

Category 5 cabling is meant for 100Base-TX, but was first used as 10Base-T (wired 2-pair instead of 4) for legacy equipment. Cat 5e is an updated version of Cat5, offers reduced crosstalk, ok for 1000BASE-T

Cat6 cable is *preferred* for 1000BASE-T Ethernet networks. Some Cat6 is made of thicker wires (for example, 22 or 23 gauge instead of 24); more pair twisting gives thicker insulation for reduced crosstalk.

Copper Ethernet Cabling Types

10BASE2 (thinnet)	RG-58 coax	10 Mbps	185 meters
10BASE5 (thicknet)	RG-8 coax	10 Mbps	500 meters
10Base-T	Cat3 (POTS) or Cat5	10 Mbps	100 meters
100Base-T (fast ethernet)	Cat5	100 Mbit/s	100MHz
1000Base-T (gigabit ethernet)	Cat5e	1Gbit/s	100MHz
10GBase-T	Cat6	1Gbit/s	250MHz
10GBase-T	Cat6a	10Gbit/s	500MHz, shielded
10GBase-T	Cat7 (not TIA/EIA ratified)	10Gbit/s	600MHz, shielded

Cat 5/6/6a have different speed performance at different lengths and shorter is faster.

Cat5 can do 1000Base-T, but not guaranteed. Cat 5e/6 achieve maximum efficiency at 55 meters.

When sizing copper ethernet cables remember that cable should not extend more than 100m (~328ft).

Power over Ethernet (PoE)

Endspan means PoE is built into switch. Midspan means a Inline Power Injector is used to add power

Mode A (phantom): Power and data use same twisted pairs; Mode B: separate pairs for each power and data.

IEEE 802.3af (802.3at type1) specifies a max 15.4W, 802.3at (type 2) specifies a max of 30W (typically 25W)

Other Cabling Types and Specifications

All RG (Radio Guide) specs use a familiar CATV F-connector on coaxial cable. BASE means "baseband"

RG-6 coax is commonly used by local cable companies to connect individual homes to the distribution point. For higher frequency signals over longer distances (~70 meters). RG-6 replaced RG-9 with better shielding.

RG-59 low-freq, shorter distance, like component video; older shielding, susceptible to UHF interference, impedance of 75 Ohms. RG-6 was preferred for video.

RG-58 - early 10BASE2 max length 185 meters; impedance 50 Ohms. Better frequency range, shielding

RG-8- 10BASE5, 500 meters. RG-58 and -8 predicted to replace RG-6 and RG-59

[You may see RG-500 for heavy outdoor use (burial) - has a FAT core, 75 Ohms, super-long range]

Fiber Optics: LX FX and S's can all do MMF - FX has full and half duplex (below)

100Base-SX	100Mbps	200-550m	MMF (short wavelength laser)
100Base-FX	100Mbps	2km full duplex, 400m half-duplex	MMF
1000Base-LX	1000Mbps	10km SMF or 550m MMF	(both SMF and MMF)
1000Base-LH	1000Mbps	10km	SMF
1000Base-ZX	1000Mbps	70km	SMF
10GBase-SR and -SW	10 Gbps	300m (short reach)	MMF
10GBase-LW	10 Gbps	10km	SMF
10GBase-LR	10 Gbps	25km (long reach)	SMF
10GBase-ER and -EW	10 Gbps	40km (extended reach)	SMF
100GBASE-ER4	100 Gbps	40km	SMF
100GBASE-SR10	100 Gbps	100-125km	MMF

Advantages of fiber: difficult to monitor (tap), no RF interference, support long distances

Multimode (MMF) refers that different light frequencies bouncing along a fiber bundle; often uses LEDs (less expensive), so signal degrades at a shorter distance. The core is typically 62.5 microns or larger in diameter

Singlemode (SMF) uses a single fiber with single frequency of light; more expensive- lasers to make the distance and increase signal strength. Typically uses a small light carrying core of 8 to 10 microns in diameter.

Fiber Connectors:



ST (Straight Tip)

SC (Subscriber Connector)

LC (Local Connector)

MT-RJ

The SC connector is called a subscriber, standard, or square connector.

The MTRJ goes by two names, the "Media Termination Recommended Jack" and "Mechanical Transfer Registered Jack". It has two fiber strands (that is, a transmit strand and a receive strand) included in a single connector. Despite the second nickname, it doesn't lock into place or anything.

The LC (Lucent/Local/Little Connector) connects to a terminating device by pushing the connector into the terminating device with a "click" and can be removed by depressing the tab on the connector to pull it out.

A Straight Tip (ST) connector is sometimes referred to as a bayonet connector; most commonly used with multimode; connects by pushing the connector in and then twisting the connector housing to lock it in place.

- Multimode Delay Distortion - on multi-mode fiber-optic cables when an initial transmission can arrive at the receiver after a second transmission

- Mode of Propagation: the path that light takes through a fiber-optic cable.

- A multiplexer combines a number of signals into a single signal for transmission over the medium.

Bulk Data Carrier Types

Bytes to bits in bandwidth conversions

"A megabit per second (abbreviated as Mbps, Mbit/s, or mbps) is a unit of data transfer rates equal to 1,000,000 bits per second (this equals 1,000 kilobits per second). Because there are 8 bits in a byte, a transfer speed of 8 megabits per second (8 Mbps) is equivalent to 1,000,000 bytes per second (approximately 976 KiB/s)"

1 Kbps = 1000/8=125 bytes; 1 Mbps = 1,000,000/8=125,000 bytes

Bytes are made up of eight bits, so one kilobyte equals eight kilobits

1KB per sec = 8 Kbps; 1MB per sec = 8 Mbps

T-carrier (T1- US/ Canada), and E-carrier (E1- Europe)

Transmission System Level 1 - For trunking, time-division multiplexing. The T-carrier system (T1 and T3) refers to copper transport corresponding to DS1 and DS3. DS0 supported twenty 2.4 kbit/s channels, ten 4.8 kbit/s channels, five 9.67 kbit/s channels, one 56 kbit/s channel, or one 64 kbit/s clear channel, which is where DSL and ISDN came in. The base DS0 represents a single voice call digitized at 8 kHz sample rate w/ 8-bit pulse-code modulation at 8000 samples/sec which comes out to 64kbit/s

T1/E1/DS1 - 24 channels (DS0's)- 64 kbit/s per channel 1.5Mbit/s total line rate, 8 bits for framing info. E1 - 32 channels 2.048 Mbit/s line rate

T3/E3/DS3 - 28 T1 circuits - 672 T1 channels - 44.736 Mbit/s. E3 = 16 E1 circuits, 512 channels, 33.368 Mbit/s

In T1/E1 more than one frame is sent at once. Two methods to grouping these frames together:

Super Frame (SF) combines 12 standard 193-bit frames into one. Extended Super Frame (ESF) 24 193-bit frames into one.

Data Capacity - The beer/soda can analogy:

Base DS0- single voice call digitized at 8 kHz sample rate w/ 8-bit PCM @ 8000 samples/sec = 64kbit/s

DS0	56/64Kbps	1 POTS line	Old modem	One can
DS1/T1	1.544 Mbps	1.536 Mbps		A case of beer (24 cans)
DS3/T3	44.736 Mbps	28 DS1's	672 DS0's	A pallet of beer with 28 cases
OC1	1 DS3/T3	[End copper	and begin	A shrink-wrapped pallet
OC3	155.52 Mbps	3 DS3's	84 DS1's	A truck that can hold 3 pallets
OC12	622.08 Mbps	12 DS3's	336 DS1's	A railroad train car - 12 pallets
OC48	2488.32 Mbps	4 OC12's	48 DS3's	4 train cars x 12 pallets
OC192	9953.28 Mbps	16 OC12's	192 DS3's	16 train cars - 192,024 DS0's
OC768	39813.12 Mbps	64 OC12's	768 DS3's	Train with 64 railroad cars

Rough calculations for downloading a 1GB file (including ISDN and DSL)

Connection	Speed	(Y:D:H:M:S)	Difference
56 K	56,000 bps	1:15:40:57	96% slower
128 K	128,000 bps	17:21:40	91% slower
256 K	256,000 bps	8:40:50	83% slower
512 K	512,000 bps	4:20:25	66% slower
768 K	768,000 bps	2:53:37	50% slower
T1, DS-1	1.544 Mbps	1:26:21	Baseline
T3, DS-3	44.736 Mbps	2:59	2,798% faster
OC-3	155.520 Mbps	51	9,973% faster
OC-12	622.080 Mbps	13	40,191% faster
OC-48	2.488 Gbps	3	161,040% faster
OC-192	10 Gbps	1	647,569% faster

SONET - Synchronous Transport Signals (STS)

Synchronous Optical networking (SONET) - ANSI - Synchronous Transport Signals (STS)

Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SDH) - International equivalent - Synchronous Transport Modules (STM)

SONET	SDH	Bandwidth	Overhead
STS-1/ OC-1	STM-0	51.48Mbps	1.728Mbps
STS-3/ OC-3	STM-1	155.52Mbps	6.912Mbps
STS-12/ OC-12	STM-4	622.08Mbps	20.736Mbps
2.5G SONET/ STS-48/ OC-48	STM-16	2.488Gbps	82.944Mbps
5G SONET/ STS-96/ OC-96	STM-32	4.876Gbps	
10G SONET/ STS-192/ OC-192	STM-64	9.953Gbps	442.368 Mbps
STS-256/ OC-256	STM-128	13.271Gbps	
STS-768/ OC-768	STM-256	39.813Gbps	1.327104Gbps

ISDN - Integrated Services Digital Network - Delivered over T1/E1

ISDN has two levels of service:

BRI - Basic Rate Interface (2B+D):

2 64kbit/s bearer/ user (B) channels (throughput)

1 16kbit/s signaling/delta (D) channel (connection maintenance)

PRI - Primary Rate Interface - hooked up directly to the telco central office

- 23B + 1D on a T1 (1.544 Mbps)

- 30B + 1D + sync/alarm channel on an E1 (2.048 Mbps)

- Commonly to deliver Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) to digital PBX (23 lines in one)

- Fewer active B channels can be used for a fractional T1.

- Can be used flexibly and reassigned when necessary (such as video conferencing)

- More channels can be used with more T1s, within certain design limits (PRI pairing)

- PRI pairing uses NFAS (non-facility associated signalling) to accommodate itself

ISDN Terminology:

An R reference point resides between a non-ISDN device to a terminal adapter.

An S/T reference point resides between a NT1 and a terminal endpoint 1 (TE1).

A TA (terminal adapter) performs conversion between a non-ISDN device and a TE1 device.

A U reference point resides between a NT1 and the wall jack connecting back to an ISDN service provider.

A NT1 (network termination 1) device interconnects a four-wire ISDN circuit and a two-wire ISDN circuit.